PD3109
.R22

5.13.03

From the Library of

Professor William Henry Green

Bequeathed by him to

the Library of

Princeton Theological Seminary

PD3109
.R22

LIBRARY OF PRINCETON THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY
5.13.03

Dr. E. C. RASK'S

DANISH GRAMMAR

EDITED BY

THORL. GUDM. REPP.

SECOND EDITION.

COPENHAGEN.

PUBLISHED BY J. H. SCHULTZ.

1846.

PRINTED BY J. H. SCHULTZ,

PRINTER TO THE KING AND TO THE UNIVERSITY.

TO

HIS MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY

KING CHRISTIAN THE EIGHTH.

SIRE,

It is to YOUR ROYAL Munificence that the second edition of the work, now laid at YOUR MAJESTY'S feet, owes its appearance. For, the first edition being out of print, and a great demand existing for a second, still the publisher could not adequately remunerate the labors of an editor; so

that the task of editing would not, in all probability, have been undertaken, had not YOUR MAJESTY been graciously pleased to supply the means required for its accomplishment. The Editor therefore most humbly hopes, that YOUR MAJESTY will graciously receive the following most humble statement, in respect to his share in the edition now offered to the public.

The full title of the first edition runs as follows: "A Grammar of the Danish Language for the Use of Englishmen, together with extracts in prose and verse. By Erasmus Rask, Professor and Librarian in the University of Copenhagen, and member of several learned societies. Copenhagen. 1830." In reediting this work, it appeared to me, that two objects must steadily be kept in view viz. that it should be rendered really useful to Englishmen, by exhibiting to them the structure of the Danish language in a plain and intelligible form: and that at the same time, no material part of Professor Rask's system should be sacrificed; but every respect paid to the memory of the great linguist, in the reproduction of his work.

Fourteen Years have now elapsed since his death, and still but a very small part of the improvements proposed and advocated by him — improvements which he professedly adopted from Peter Syv and Höjsgaard — has met with general reception. Nevertheless his arguments made a great impression, and that impression is not as yet by any means entirely obliterated. Under these circumstances it appeared, that in point of usefulness it would scarcely be advisable simply to reprint the learned author's work without any modification whatever; and this seemed the more evident since even in the original edition, Professor Rask himself had sacrificed some part of his own system and e. g. reinstated the *aa*, which in his other works he had discarded, adopting instead Höjsgaards *å*. I could therefore devise no better plan for the accomplishment of the twofold object stated above, than to preserve indeed Professor Rask's system in all essentials unaltered; but at the same time point out by means of notes inserted partly in, and partly under the text, where he differed from the general usage. In some instances

he had in fact done this himself, so that I felt the more justified in adopting this plan, in a far greater number of places, where he had omitted to notice his deviation. The *å* I have expunged from the alphabet, for in retaining it there, he appeared scarcely consistent with himself, since he did not make use of it in any other part of the book except in the last extract. The Q I reinstated, for although even his adversaries, e. g. Mr. Molbech, agree with him in considering it as superfluous and useless, it still is in general use.

The English I have corrected in many places, though perhaps not in every place where this might have been done. The consideration that Mr. B. Thorpe M. A. of Cambridge had read the proofs of the first edition, made me cautious in rejecting idioms and phrases, which although sometimes appearing to me not quite correct, had been allowed to remain by a Graduate of an English University and a distinguished scholar. I accordingly confined my corrections to passages where either some obscurity in the expression, or a manifest error seemed to render them necessary.

And thus I lay before YOUR MAJESTY that work of Professor Rask which it has been my humble endeavour, without impairing in any part, to render more practically useful.

Some learned men among the Danes have lately expressed a great deal of apprehension lest their language should gradually become extinct. If this fear be well founded, one way — perhaps the chief way — of retarding such a consummation, is in my humble opinion, to propagate the knowledge of it, by means of Grammars and Dictionaries, among the great nations who take the lead in the progress of civilization. As Professor Borring has done much, in the way of disseminating the knowledge of Danish among the French as well as of the French language amongst his countrymen, so I have humbly endeavoured, in various ways, not only to promote the knowledge of English in Denmark, but also the knowledge of Danish in England; and if these very humble efforts meet, in some degree, with YOUR ROYAL MAJESTY'S most August as well as most competent approbation, they will receive indeed, a high and satisfactory reward.

How scanty and unsatisfactory and uncertain is our knowledge of most of the languages spoken in the ancient world, from the Indus westward to the Atlantic, because so few of them were known to the Greeks and the Romans! And why? — If they had through Greek and Latin Grammars and Dictionaries preserved any memorial of themselves, they would not have utterly perished; or left their identity doubtful.

That it may please the Almighty to preserve YOUR MAJESTY, together with YOUR MAJESTY'S AUGUST CONSORT, in the continual enjoyment of Health, Prosperity and Peace, is the fervent prayer of,

SIRE,

YOUR MAJESTY'S

most devoted,

most obedient

and most humble servant

THORLEIFR GUDMUNDSON REPP.

Copenhagen the 3d December 1846.

THE AUTHOR'S PREFACE.

Nearly 30 years have now elapsed, since Capt. Fr. Schneider published his Danish Grammar for the use of Englishmen, during which time no other attempt has been made in English, to describe the structure of the Danish in a more satisfactory way, or to assist the English learner in acquiring a more accurate knowledge of this language; although it has been very considerably enriched and improved, and its Literature greatly enlarged and cultivated during this period. But even for the time when it was composed, Capt. Schneider's Grammar was a very imperfect one; for besides the general inaccuracy of the rules, the carelessness of the spelling and translation of the Danish words, and the utter tastelessness in the arrangement and appearance of the text, it is totally devoid of system. Still, if the language itself follows a system, as in fact every language may

be supposed to do, or it could not be spoken by a whole nation, that system should appear in the Grammar, or the Grammar must be acknowledged to be deficient in the most material point, its chief object being to exhibit a view of the system of speech adopted by the nation. This system, however, is seldom so evident in any language, that there may not be formed many different ideas of it, and consequently many different plans may be laid down for a Grammar of one and the same language. That which I have here adopted is, for the greatest part the same as that of the Icelandic, as also of the Frisic and the Anglosaxon Grammars which I have published. The internal structure of all these, and indeed also of the other languages of the Gothic stock, appears to be nearly the same, though less evident in the Danish than in the ancient idioms; and it may afford an assistance to the learned inquirer, to find them all exhibited from the same point of view. But even to those who merely study the language, in order to be able to read a book in it, or to use it in conversation, it will be convenient to find a true and tolerably complete system of inflection and formation of words in the Grammar; for although the study may appear easier, if the Grammar offer merely some loose or detached remarks, together

with a variety of examples; yet this is merely concealing the difficulty, making the knowledge thus acquired deficient, and, consequently, the road much longer, as it obliges the learner by dint of long experience and use to deduce the rules himself, for which he vainly seeks in his Grammar.

As to the nature of this system, I am happy to find it agree so closely with that of Mr. John Grant in his Grammar of the English language. In order, however, not to write a large and crabbed volume on an easy and elegant tongue, I have carefully omitted reasoning about the system and the terms of Grammar. In the syntax, I fear, I have been rather too short, but this defect may easily be supplied in a new edition, should this first essay in any way be so happy as to meet with the encouragement of the public. Mr. Hansen of Christiania has published a separate treatise on this head of Danish Grammar. Perhaps also an explanation of the old poetical forms may be missed; in the notes however the reader will find the most remarkable difficulties of this description explained. In order to be short in the notes, I have sometimes marked the grammatical property of the words by a fraction, of which the numerator is intended to indicate the declension, or conjugation, and the denominator the class, or sub-

division, to which the word belongs; e. g. 'Tjeneste ($\frac{1}{2}$)' *signifies that the noun* Tjeneste, *service, follows the first declension, common class, or is, in every respect, inflected like* Dame, *lady, p. 18; likewise* befaler ($\frac{1}{1}$)' *signifies that the verb* jeg befaler, *I command, belongs to the first conjugation, first class, and is inflected like* jeg elsker, *I love, p. 40, and so on.*

*With regard to the Literature, this place is much too limited to speak of it to any purpose; we have now translations of many celebrated works of English and American authors, as: Shakespear, Fielding, Sir Walter Scott, Cooper, Washington Irving &c. which may afford an easy and agreeable introduction to the Danish Literature; though translations in general are scarcely to be recommended to learners. Those who wish for a thorough knowledge of the Danish and Norwegian**)*

---

*) *Throughout the kingdom of Norway, the Danish language, though pronounced with a peculiar accent, is used to this day, in speaking and writing, in the pulpit and in public affairs of every description. Several natives, however, since the union with Sweden, seem to pride themselves particularly on calling it* Norwegian, *nor is it to be denied that, even before the celebrated Holberg, the Norwegians had an honorable share in cultivating and improving it; but that its whole present form originated in Denmark is an historical fact beyond dispute. From hence it was propagated to Norway, especially about the time of Luther's Reformation, when Literature*

authors till 1814, may find sufficient information in Nyerup's & Kraft's dansk-norske Literatur-lexicon. *But a book which presents a view of the best authors, in the elegant branches of Literature, together with copious specimens of their writings, and with which every learner of Danish should be provided, is K. L. Rahbek's* danske Læsebog eller Exempelsamling *in 2 voll. 8vo.*

It may be proper still to add the names of the most celebrated authors of Danish Grammars. The Rev. P. Syv wrote several works on this subject with great skill, and considerably improved the orthography, though his opponents strove very hard to defend the ffu *instead of* v *(e. g.* haffue *for* have) *and the diphthongs,* ia, ie, ay, ey *&c. Höjsgård discovered the true system of the ten vowels, and proposed the method of denoting them with single characters now again adopted by those who care to distinguish them. He also wrote a Grammar and a Syntax in separate volumes.*

---

and learning were in a very low state, and almost totally extinct in that country, and the old Norse *greatly corrupted and dissolved into rustic dialects or provincialisms. Hence no attempt was ever made to translate the holy Scriptures into Norse, nor any polemical pamphlet either for or against the catholic party published, nor any sermons or works of instruction & education compiled, nor any law promulgated in Norwegian after that time.*

Still more celebrated are Prof. J. Baden's Forelæsninger over det danske Sprog, *of which four editions have appeared. This was the first regular and complete Grammar of the Danish Language, and is still perhaps one of the best existing. Capt. Abrahamson wrote a very elaborate Danish Grammar for Germans, also of great merit; and Dichman a treatise on Orthography and a Grammar perhaps in rather too philosophical a style. Prof. S. N. J. Bloch published a Grammar for schools together with a treatise on Orthography, in which he differs from his predecessors, admitting the diphthongs and many mute vowels and consonants, but the second vol. of his Grammar, intended for the syntax never appeared. Prof. L. Nissen wrote another Grammar for schools, as also Prof. F. H. Guldberg. Besides these there were many smaller works published for schools, amongst which* Thonboe's *and* Benzien's *are the most remarkable: the former has been reprinted several times; of the latter a second edition has recently appeared; this being the last, and containing also a syntax, is perhaps the best of the smaller works.*

Finally, I have to apologize much for my English stile, I ought not, perhaps, to have hazarded writing a book in this language, nor was it

my intention to do so, when I began the work. The bookseller, who was the owner of Capt. Schneider's Grammar, merely wished me to prepare a new edition of that work, which I thought might be undertaken without great presumption; but I was soon convinced of the utter faultiness) of the Grammar, and consequently of the necessity of almost writing a new one; I went on however cheerfully mending the old work, until the bookseller, when the printing of the new edition was to begin, gave up the idea, thinking my alterations much too many and too hazarded or unnecessary. In order therefore not to lose the time and labor spent in preparing the most difficult part of the manuscript, I found myself obliged to look out for another bookseller, to undertake the publication, as a book of my own, leaving at the same time Capt. Schneider's work entirely out of sight, as far as could be done without rewriting the manuscript. If, after all these changes, the text of*

---

*) *As the reader may demand a proof of this hard censure, I shall merely quote the first line, where the author states that there are 28 letters in the Danish alphabet, though the large table immediately following contains only 27. The pronunciation of the first letter,* A, *is thus described: "Like the broad* A *in* all, wall." *The truth is the very reverse, for the broad English* A *is a sound never given to this letter in Danish.*

the book still reads tolerably well, the reader will, in great measure, be indebted for it to the able and learned translator of my Anglosaxon Grammar, Mr. B. Thorpe, who kindly undertook the tedious business of correcting one of the proofsheets throughout the volume.

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

1. The Danish alphabet consists of twenty seven letters, viz.

FIGURE	NAME *Danice*	NAME *Anglice*	POWER
A, a, or 𝔄, 𝔞,	A,	Ah,	a in *father, part, far.*
B, b, — 𝔅, 𝔟,	Bé,	Bey,*)	b.
C, c, — ℭ, 𝔠,	Cé,	Cey,	s and k, as in English.
D, d, — 𝔇, 𝔡,	Dé,	Dey,	d hard; and th flat, as in *thus.*
E, e, — 𝔈, 𝔢,	E,	Ey,	French *é fermé* & *è ouvert.*
F, f, — 𝔉, 𝔣,	Eff,	Eff,	f.
G, g, — 𝔊, 𝔤,	Gé,	Ghey,	g in *go, give.*
H, h, — ℌ, 𝔥,	Haa,	Haw,	h aspirated.
I, i, — ℑ, 𝔦,	I,	Ee,	ee in *bee*, i in *bill.*
J, j, — 𝔍, 𝔧,	Jod,	Yoth,	y consonanth.
K, k, — 𝔎, 𝔨,	Kaa,	Kåw,	k.
L, l, — 𝔏, 𝔩,	El,	El,	l.
M, m, — 𝔐, 𝔪,	Em,	Em,	m.
N, n, — 𝔑, 𝔫,	En,	En,	n.

*) In the names of the letters the Danes pronounce é like the French é (with the acute accent), or like English *ey* in the word *they.* The former of these two columns gives the names of the letters with the Danish spelling: the latter gives the same names spelled in the English way, so as to lead the English learner to the right Danish pronunciation of these names. ED.

FIGURE	NAME *Danice*	NAME *Anglice*	POWER
O, o, or Ɔ, ɔ,	O,	O,	o in *more, for.*
P, p, — Ꝑ, ꝑ,	Pé,	Pey,	p.
Q, q, — Ꝙ, ꝙ,	Ku,	Koo,	q.
R, r, — Ʀ, r,	Er,	Er,	r.
S, s, — Ꞩ, ſ,	Es,	Es,	s hard.
T, t, — Ꞇ, t,	Té,	Tey,	t.
U, u, — Ʉ, u,	U,	Oo,	oo in *fool,* u in *full.*
V, v, — Ꝟ, v,	Vé,	Vey,	v in *vein,* w in *howl.*
X, x, — Ꝫ, x,	Ex,	Ex,	x hard.
Y, y, — Ꝩ, y,	Y,	U, [h]	in *pur, nul.*
Z, z, — Ʒ, ʒ,	Zet,	Set,	z.
Æ, æ, — Ꜳ, æ,	Æ,	Ai,	a in *sale,* ai in *said.*
Ø, ø, } — Ɔ, ø, }	Ø,	Eu, (French)	*fermé* in *peu.*
Ö, ö, } — Ꝏ, ö, }	Ö,	Eu, (French)	*ouvert* in *veuve,* œu in *cœur, œuf.*

2. *Remarks on the alphabet.*

Dr. Rask omitted the Q, and declared it to be "not merely superfluous and useless, but even prejudicial to a faithful representation of the language, by obscuring the origin and affinity of words, e. g. *Kvinde,* woman," he said, "is derived from *Kone,* wife; *bekvem,* convenient, from *komme,* to come, (Fr. venir); *Kvartèr,* a quarter of an hour, is also called *Kortèr; Kvast,* tuft, is originally the same word as *Kóst,* broom; and *kvæle,* suffocate, the same as the Engl. *kill.*" And he added: "The Q is therefore justly rejected by the celebrated Grammarian P. Syv, as also by the learned Prof. S. N. J. Bloch in his *Danske Sproglære,* Odense 1817. It is however still used by some, but always followed by *v,* never by *u* in any Danish book, as: *Qvinde, beqvem, Qvarter, &c.*" [Christian Molbech in his Danish dictionary has also declared Q to be "properly speaking a superfluous letter, but retains it nevertheless; and as it is still used by almost every Danish author except Rask it is here introduced again into the alphabet. ED.]

Z, z, (Zet, pron. *sett*) has crept from the German orthography into a few words, which should be written by *s*, according to the true pronunciation, as: *Zobel,*

sable; *zire*, to adorn, better *Sobel, sire.* [Dr. Rask omitted z in the alphabet but I have reinstated it, since it is indispensable not only in the words enumerated in Mr. Molbechs dictionary, but also in a great many nouns proper. ED.]

Q, Z, and W are used in names of foreign origin, as are also the German vowels *ä*, *ü* (for *æ*, *y*); hut these characters ought not to be inserted in the alphabet, never occurring in any Danish word.

Dr. Rask inserted *Å* which always has been used by the Swedes, as the twenty fourth letter, in his alphabet and justified the adoption of this character by the following remarks: "Å has been, till the beginning of this century, commonly represented by *aa*, according to the old Lowgerman orthography, but *å* is found in ancient Danish and Norwegian manuscripts: it's reintroduction, proposed by the celebrated Danish Grammarian Höjsgård 1743, later by Schlegel, Baden, Nyerup, Schrejber, Thonboe &c. has, in the last decennium, been realized in about thirty separate books or pamphlets by Prof. A. Gamborg, Mr. H. J. Hansen, Mr. N. M. Petersen, also by the author of these pages, and several anonymous writers. At all events the sound is simple, and continually interchanging with other simple vowels, (*a, æ, o*), in the inflection and derivation of words, e. g. *tæller*, to count, in the past tense *talde* or *tålde*, counted; *gå*, to go, *Gang*, gait, *gængse*, current, common: from *Får*, sheep, is derived *Færöerne*, the Faroe Islands. So also in kindred dialects, as *Vingård*, vineyard; *Tåre*, tear, Germ. Zähre; *Måned*, month, Germ. Monath; *åben*, open &c. Whereas *aa* is sometimes long *a*, sometimes even to be read in two syllables as: *Haarlem, Aaron, Kanaan, Knud Danaast*, the name of a Danish Prince. As the learner however will find *aa* for *å* in most printed books hitherto published, we think it convenient to preserve that orthography in the succeeding pages".

Æ, like Å, represents a simple vowel sound, and must never be separated or resolved into *ae*, which make distinct syllables, e. g. *bejae* (be-ya-e), affirm.

Ø and Ö are commonly confounded, so that Ø is used for both sounds in books printed in the Gothic type Ö in those in the Roman character. The distinction pro-

posed by Höisgård, shall be adopted here, as it will greatly assist the student's memory in recollecting the genuine pronunciation. [In the above alphabet Ø and Ö have been counted for one letter. ED.]

3. *Of Pronunciation.*

The double sound of some of the letters may create some difficulty.

The open *e* is exactly like the *æ*, but usually short, as *Herre,* gentleman, like *værre,* worse. The *é* fermé, or close *e,* is very frequent in Danish, but not of frequent occurence in English; still it is found in such words as: *their, vein, veil,* which have a different sound from: *thère, vain.*

In analogy with this, the open *o* sounds exactly like the *aa*, but is generally short as, *Kaag,* boiling, like *Bog,* book The close *o* is often used, where the English has the open one, as: *Bróder*, brother, &c. [The Danish close *o* is more close than the English and has a sound more nearly approaching to Walker's 2d *o*, in *move.* ED.]

E, O, I, U, Y have in general their close sound at the end of syllables, whether long or short, e. g. *tre,* three; *lé-ve,* live; *Ko,* cow; *troværdig*, credible; *fri,* free; *Skri-ve-ri,* (continual) writing; *synes,* seems; *yder-mére,* moreover. There are however some few exceptions, as: *Sté-det,* the place; *Bó-gen,* the book; *vi,* we; *gúdelig,* religious (book), have the open sound, most of these because the consonant originally belonged to the preceding syllable.

For cases in which the syllable terminates in a consonant, scarcely any certain rule can be given, although the open sound is perhaps the more frequent, e. g. *trende,* three (to each); *Konge,* king; *vinde,* to gain; *Guld,* gold; *gylden,* golden; especially before *ng, nd, lg, ld.* But in *Ord,* a word; *Nórden,* the North, the *ó* is long. *Med,*

with, *for*, for, have the open short sound; in *ved*, by, the *e* is close, although it be short; and in *stor*, great, the *o* is close.

Sometimes *e*, *i*, *u* are doubled when long or close before a consonant in the same syllable; unfortunately this rule applies only to the cases, where the consonant following is *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, or *s*, e. g. *Piil*, arrow, but *hvid* (never *hviid*) white; and not even regularly to all the cases mentioned, e. g. *Viin*, wine, but *min*, mine, the pronunciation in both cases being exactly alike (viz veen, meen). As soon as a vowel is added in the inflection of the words, the doubling ceases, as: *Pilen*, the arrow, *Pile*, arrows; *Vinen*, the wine, *Vine* wines. As there is little danger, that the reader should divide these *ee*, *ii*, *uu*, into distinct syllables, we shall preserve this orthography, though very imperfect, as the most common; and in cases necessary, where it is not used, assist the learner, by placing accents over the vowels, (´) for the close or long sound and (`) for the open or slender, as in French,

There are no diphthongs in Danish, but *aj*, *ej*, *oj*, *uj*, *öj*, even though written by some *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *ui*, *öi*, are pronounced with the open sound of the vowels and a distinct *y* consonant following, never like *ai*, *ei* French *oi*, *ui*, or the like, e. g. *ej*, not, sounds like Engl. *eye* or *I*; *Konvoy*, a convoy, like the verb *to convoy*, &c. Perhaps however the *j* is a little softer after the vowels than at the beginning of words. Even after *g* and *k* it is soft, e. g. *begjére*, desire; *kjédelig*, tedious; like the Engl. *guardian*, *cure*, &c.

In like manner *av*, *ev*, *iv*, *ov*, *æv*, *öv* are pronounced as clear vowels followed sometimes by a distinct *v* consonant, sometimes by a *w*; the *v* also is softer after the vowels than at the beginning, e. g. *tav*, was silent; *Brev*, letter; *stiv*, stiff; *Tov*, cable; *Ræv*, fox; *dov*, deaf. The sound of *w* is particularly observable, when another consonant follows, e. g. *tavs*, silent; *Evropa*, Europe;

stivne, to stiffen; *hovne,* to swell; *Hævn,* revenge; *søvnig,* sleepy, drowsy.

Like *j* & *v* some other consonants have also a softer sound after the vowels than before them, thus *d* sounds like *dh*, Anglosaxon and Icel. ð, or Engl. flat *th* in *bathe*, when it concludes the word, or is placed between two vowels, also when doubled, as *lâd*, lazy, sluggish; *Fader*, father; *vædde*, lay a wager, &c. After *l, n, r,* it is scarcely perceptible in the common pronunciation, except as a peculiar emphasis on the vowel preceding, [e. g. Stald, *stable* is pronounced stall; Mand, *man* pron. man; Bord, *table* pron. boor (where oo sounds as in floor). ED]

G in similar cases has also a softer sound, which was formerly written *gh*, e. g. *Sag,* cause, affair, concern; *tage,* take. Sometimes after *e, ö* it is pronounced like *j* (or Engl. *y* cons.), e. g. eg in *jeg,* I, sounds quite like *ej,* in *Vej,* way; and *ög* in *Dögn,* a day and night, like *öj* in *höjne,* to heighten.

[H is not aspirated in Danish before *j* (in stead of which Molbech always writes *i*), or *v*, e. g. *Hjelp,* help, aid, pron. *yelp*; *Hvalfisk*, whale, pron. *Valfisk*; *hvid,* white, pron. *veeth.* ED.]

The English sounds of *j, ch, sh, th* sharp are entirely foreign to the Danish language.

4. *Of accentuation.*

In Danish there are six accents *(Tonehold)* or modes of pronouncing the vowels, three long and three short, four of them are easy to understand and to apply, but examples of the other two are not easily found in other languages:

the long are:	1) the trailing	as:	*oh!*
	2) the advancing	—	*oral.*
	3) the abrupt	—	*(pro-noun?)*
the short are:	1) the rolling	—	*worthy, love.*
	2) the running	—	*torrent.*
	3) the rebounding	—	

The rebounding is the abrupt shortened, but it must be learned by oral instruction; they are both very frequent in Danish, and very difficult to foreigners.

The abrupt takes place in almost all long monosyllables as: *Bârn,* child; *Been,* bone; *Bi,* bee; *Blôd,* blood; *Ur* (Uhr), watch; *sky,* shun; *Træ,* tree; *dø,* die.

The rebounding in many short monosyllables, terminating in consonants, especially *nd, ng, ld, lg, rg.* Ex. *kàn,* can; *Kàm,* comb; *hèn,* away, up to; *slèm,* bad; *Skind,* skin; *ónd,* evil; *ung,* young; *Hyld,* eldertree; *Bælg,* husk, bellows; *Sorg,* sorrow. But many others have the running accent, as: *han,* he; *rank,* slim, tall; *Ven,* friend.

The advancing (or obtuse) is usual in pronouncing long vowels in dissyllables or polysyllables, as: *bārnagtig,* childish; *benig,* bony; *more,* divert; *Fure,* furrow; *lyde,* obey; *taale,* endure; *være,* be; *føre,* carry; *Hjörne,* corner.

The running (or sharp) is usual with short and sharp vowels in dissyllables, especially before double consonants, as: *Klasse,* class; *hellig,* holy; *ikke,* not; *begge,* both; *Odde,* point of land; *Fusker,* bungler; *hyggelig,* comfortable; *tækkelig,* neat; *Børste,* a brush; *Smörrebrød,* bread and butter.

The trailing and the rolling occur but rarely; the former mostly in interjections and contracted monosyllables, as: *a!* ah! *o!* oh! *Fa'r,* father, *Mo'r,* mother; the latter especially when a short vowel is followed by *rd,* as: *myrde,* to murder; *værdig,* worthy; sometimes *ld* produces the same effect, but never *v* as in English.

As to the position or place of the accent *(Tonefald-et),* the Danish also differs widely from the English. In words of northern origin, the first radical syllable usually bears the emphasis, as: *vǽsentlig,* essential; *Gjérrighed,* avarice; *týdelig,* evident; *betýdelig,* considerable; *Ubetýdelighed,* insignificancy; *Rèntekammeret,* the Danish

board of revenue, or the exchequer; but we also find: *agtværdig,* worthy of esteem; *retfærdig,* just; *København,* Copenhagen; *Bornhòlm, Kristiansstàd, Frideriksdâl, Hofmansgāve,* &c.

Words derived from the southern languages have often the stress on the last, as: *Karavān,* caravan, *Bibliothekār,* librarian; *Karaktér,* character; *Filosofí,* philosophy; *Religión,* religion; *Sekretær,* secretary; *Direktør,* director; *Natúr,* nature; *Matematik,* mathematics, &c. When the french *e* mute is preserved in Danish, it never receives any emphasis, but sounds like short *e* at the end of Danish words, *en Terràsse,* a terrace, not *Terrassé; Artikkel,* article &c. But usually it is thrown away entirely, though sometimes written according to a false orthography, serving merely to confound the learner, by disguising the true pronunciation.

5. *Of the spelling.*

There is a great dispute among the Danish orthographers about the manner of spelling foreign words. As the Italians write *tesauro,* the Spaniards *accion,* the French *caractère, monarque,* the English *Bachelor, author, analogy* &c. entirely disregarding the Greek and Roman usage, so it seems but just that the Danes should be at liberty, to spell such words in their own writings according to their own pronunciation. In fact Prof. Bloch in his Dan. Gram. has adopted *f* for *ph*, as *Filosof,* philosopher; and it is pretty common to write, *Monárk, Mekánikus, Maskine* &c. We shall adopt also the *t* for *th,* though less frequent, the *th* being very apt to mislead the English student, e. g. *Matemātiker,* Mathematician. It is very common also to write *k* for *c*, whenever it has this sound, and only preserve *c* where, according to it's name, it sounds like *s,* e. g. *Akademi, Specier.*

As to the division of words into syllables, the learner must observe, that *j* is always referred to the pre-

ceding vowel, which is in these cases constantly pronounced short and sharp, e. g. *Vej-e*, ways, not *Ve-je*. The other consonants are usually referred to the vowel following, when single; or divided between the preceding and succeeding vowel, when more than one, no care being taken to distinguish the radical parts from the accessories, except in compound words, e. g. *Dage*, days, from *Dag*, day, but *for-ud-si-ge*, foretell from *for-ud*, beforehand, and *sige*, tell, say.

Though the Danish orthography is doubtful in many cases, yet the leading principle is evidently to express the sound as nearly as possible; and, where the sound may be expressed in two different ways, to adopt the spelling, that agrees the most with etymology, e. g. *skærpe*, to sharpen, from *skarp*, sharp, not *skjerpe*, although it would express the same sound; *skjenke*, to pour in, from Icel. *skenkja*, Germ. *schenken*, not *skænke*, because not derived from *Skank*, shank. *Saald (Såld)*, a sieve, because the verb is *sælde*, to sift, not *Sold*, which is another word, meaning *wages*, or soldiers pay, from whence *Soldat*, a soldier.

Before *a, aa, o, u, e*, the consonants *k* and *g* are always hard, as in the English words *cow, gown*, and in order to produce the sound in *cure, guard*, a *j* must be inserted, as *en Skjald*, a bard; *en Kjole*, a coat; *skjule*, conceal; *gjaldt*, was worth, cost; *Gjed*, goat; *gjorde*, made, but before *æ, ö, ø, y, i, k*, and *g* take always the softer sound, and no *j* should be inserted, as: *kær*, dear; (Lat. *carus*), *Kön*, sex, gender, (Lat. *genus*); *København*, Copenhagen; but many people, not being aware of this rule, will insert the *j* even in these cases, and write *kjær*, or *kjer, Kjön, Kjøbenhavn* &c. It is however acknowledged to be erroneous, to insert the *j*, when the primitive is a Danish word, which has *ka, ko, ku, ga, go, gu* without *j*; e, g. *at kjempe* or *kjæmpe* for *kæmpe*, to fight, combat, would be a fault, because the primitive is *Kamp*,

combat; in the same manner we write *kæmme*, to comb; from *Kam*, a comb; *skød*, shot, from *at skyde*, to shoot, and *et Skud*, a shot; *gød*, poured, from *gyde*, (Germ. *goss*), not *kjæmme*, *skjød*, *gjød*.

It is a great advantage in Danish orthography, that every noun substantive is written with a capital letter at the beginning, as numbers of words, else perfectly alike, are thereby easily distinguished at the first view.*) Ex.

(*en*) *Tale*, a speech,	(*at*) *tale*, to speak,
(*en*) *Bör*, a barrow,	(*jeg*) *bör*, I must, ought,
(*en*) *Tro*, faith,	*tro*, faithful,
(*en*) *Flöj*, weathercock,	*flöj*, flew,
(*et*) *Önske*, a wish,	(*at*) *önske*, to wish,
Vande, waters,	(*at*) *vande*, to water.

On the other hand adjectives of national names are usually written with small initials, contrary to the English usage, as: *dansk*, Danish; *norsk*, Norwegian; *svensk*, Swedish; *hollandsk*, Dutch; *engelsk*, English; *angelsaksisk*, Anglosaxon.

Those who wish to see an analysis of the sounds of the Danish and of the principal points of it's ortho-

---

*) The advantage of this usage which the Danes and Norwegians have borrowed from the Germans is not felt or acknowledged by the rest of mankind: the English, the French, the Spaniards, the Portuguese, the Italians, the Greeks, the Arabs, the Persians, the Armenians, the Russians, the Polacks, the Bohemians and the other Slavonic nations, the Magyars, the Turks, the Swedes, the Finlanders and the Icelanders spell all words in the same way without distinguishing any by a capital letter excepting nouns proper. At one time it was attempted to introduce the German fashion in England, and in many English books printed in the reign of George I and George II the nouns often have capital initials; but this practice has now become quite obsolete. Thus it is evident that the Germans with their imitators the Danes und Norwegians have in this particular been left in a very small minority. The distinction between verbs and nouns alledged to be affected by this practice is of no great moment, since the context always shews plainly enough whether a given word is a noun or a verb. ED.

graphy, may consult the author's essay: "Forsøg til en videnskabelig dansk Retskrivningslære med Hensyn til Stamsproget og Nabosproget, København 1826", published as the first volume of *Tidsskrift for nordisk Oldkyndighed.*

PART II.

INFLECTION.

6. ARTICLES.

Properly speaking the articles, *(Kjendeord)* form no peculiar part of speech, being all originally pronouns, but as many nouns are never used without some article, a previous knowledge of them may be desireable. They are moreover sometimes combined with the nouns, and then have a considerable influence on the declension. Fortunately in Danish the articles also distinguish genders and numbers like adjectives; and it would greatly assist the student's memory in recollecting the puzzling distinction of gender, if he would make it a rule, never to pronounce nor even to think of a noun without its proper article.

The Danish admits but of two genders *(Kön)*, viz. the neuter *(Intetkönnet)* and the common *(Fælleskönnet)*; the latter including the masculine *(Hankönnet)* and the feminine *(Hunkönnet)*; but even these two were formerly distinguished, there being three genders (neut. masc. & fem.) in the old mothertongue, the Icelandic, of which many traces are left in the structure of the modern language.

The numbers *(Talformerne)* are the usual two, the singular *(Entallet)* and the plural *(Flertallet)*.

There are three articles in Danish, one indefinite *(ubestemt)* and two definite *(bestemte)*, the one for nouns substantive, the other for adjectives.

The *indefinite* article has merely two forms, viz. *et* before a noun of the neuter, and *en* before one of the common gender, it has no plural. Being derived from the numeral *eet, een,* one, it is pronounced with *é* close, though short.

Ex.	neutr.	com.
sing.	*et Land,* a country,	*en Stol,* a chair
plur.	*Lande,* countries,	*Stole,* chairs.

The *definite article of nouns substantive* is *et* in the neuter, *en* in the common gender, and *-ne (ene)* in the plur. of both genders; it is pronounced with open *è* in the sing., and always added as an affix to the nouns, as:
sing. *Land-et,* the country, *Stol-en,* the chair,
plur. *Lande-ne,* the countries, *Stole-ne,* the chairs.
It is derived from the demonstrative pron. *hint* (Icel. *hitt*), *hin,* pl. *hine,* that, yon;

The *def. art. of adjectives* is *dèt* in the neut. *dén* in the com. gend. and *dé* in the plur. of both genders; it is always placed before the adj. as a separate word, as:

sing.	*det skönne (Land),*	the fine (country),
plur.	*de skönne (Lande),*	the fine (countries),
sing.	*den gamle (Stol),*	the old (chair),
plur.	*de gamle (Stole),*	the old (chairs),

This last article is nothing but the demonstrative pronoun; but when used as an article it loses all emphasis.

7. NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

Of Gender.

In Danish, as in most other languages, it is impossible to give perfectly satisfactory rules for the gender of nouns: the following observations may however be useful to the learner.

Neuters are 1) the names of countries and cities, metals and letters, as: *det frugtbare Danmark,*

fertile Denmark; *det smukke London*, fine London; *det ny Jerusalem*, the new Jerusalem; *Paris* &c. *Guld*, gold; *Sølv*, silver; *Jærn*, iron; *Bly*, lead; *et stórt E*, a capital E; *at skrive En et X for et U*, literally: to write one an X for a U (meaning the Roman number V), or ten for five, i. e. to impose upon one, make him work or pay double.

2) Most monosyllabic nouns of action, formed of verbs, without any additional termination, as: *et Køb* (or *Kjøb*), a bargain, from *købe*, to buy; *et Salg*, a sale; *et Spring*, a leap; *et Tryk*, a thrust; *et Skud*, a shot.

Those in *ang* and *gt* are excepted, as *en Sang*, a song; *en Gang*, a going, a time; *en Agt*, intention; *en Tugt*, discipline, and a few others: *en Strid*, a contest, strife; *en Drik*, a drink; *en Hjælp*, a help, assistance, which are of the common gender.

3) Derivative nouns in *-eri*, as: *Bryderi*, trouble; *Frieri*, courtship; and those in *-skab* signifying a situation or relation, as: *Broderskab-et*, the fraternity; *Adelskab*, nobility, *Venskab*, friendship.

8. To the *common* gender belong 1) most names of persons and dignities, sciences, animals, trees and plants. Ex.

en Mand, a man,	*en Qvinde*, a woman,
en Konge, a king,	*en Dronning*, a queen,
en Smed, a smith,	*en Jórdemoder*, a midwife,
en Theologi, divinity,	*en Logik*, logic,
en Hest, a horse,	*en Gaas*, a goose,
en Torsk, a cod-fish,	*en Myre*, an ant,
en Ko, a cow,	*en Kalv*, a calf,
en Slange, a snake,	*en Firbeen*, a lizard,
en Eeg, an oak,	*en Bög*, a beech,
en Tórn, a thorn,	*en Rose*, a rose,
en Tulipán, a tulip,	*en Túsendskön*, amaranth.

There are however some exceptions to this rule, *a)* especially compound words, of which the last part is a

neuter; e. g. *et Mandfolk*, a man; *et Fruentimmer*, a woman; *et Daadyr*, a doe; *et Rensdyr*, a reindeer; *et Pæretræ*, a peartree.

b) Some Names of living beings which comprize both sexes, as: *et Menneske;* man (homo); *et Folk*, people; *et Barn*, a child; *et Asen*, *et Æsel*, an ass; *et Bæst*, a beast; *et Dyr*, an animal; *et Fæ*, a brute; *et Kvæg*, (a) cattle; *et Faar*, a sheep; *et Lam*, a lamb; *et Kid*, a kid; *et Nød*, a neat; *et Hors*, *et Øg*, a jade; *et Føl*, a colt; *et Sviin*, a swine; *et Egern*, a squirrel.

2) Derivative nouns in: *de, dom, hed, ing, ning, else, sel, t, st, en*, as: *Höjde*, height; *Brædde*, breadth; *en Guddom*, a godhead; *Trældom*, slavery; *Hvidhed*, whiteness; *Hurtighed*, swiftness; *Forandring*, change; *Læsning*, reading; *Slægtning*, a relation; *Begyndelse*, beginning; *Forkortelse*, abbreviation; *Indførsel*, importation; *Vext*, growth; *Hugst*, cutting (of trees); *Skrigen*, a crying; *Løben*, a running, Also those in *-skab*, denoting qualities, as: *en Egenskab*, a quality; *en Ondskab*, malice.

3) Foreign words in *-tør, ist, án, ón, isme, tét.* Ex *Konduktør*, *Rigorist*, *Lutherán*, *Kujón* (coward), *Kalkón* (turkey), *Revisión*, *Terrorisme*, *Prioritét*, except *et Universitét.*

9. Compounds take the gender of the last part, as: *et Birketræ*, a birchtree; *et Mórbærtræ*, a mulberry-tree; *Mesterstykke*, a masterpiece; *en Sølvtallerken*, a silverplate; *en Hovedpunkt*, a main point. Except *et Bogstav*, a letter; *et Maaltid*, a meal; *et Vidnesbyrd*, a testimony; from *en Stav, en Tid, en Byrd.*

It is to be observed that the following words change their significations with their genders:

of the neuter gender:	*of the common gender:*
et Ark, a sheet (of paper),	*en Ark*, an ark,
et Bid, a bite,	*en Bid*, a morsel,

et Brud, a breach,	*en Brúd*, a bride,
et Buk, a bow (inclination of the body),	*en Buk*, a He-goat,
et Digt, a poem,	*en Digt*, a fiction, tale,
et Flór, a gauze.	*en Flór*, prosperity,
et Følge, retinue, train,	*en Følge*, consequence*),
et Gran, a grain,	*en Gran*, a pine,
et Leje, a couch, bed,	*en Leje*, hire,
et Læg, a fold; dogsear (e.g. in a book),	*en Læg*, calf of the leg,
et Lod, half an ounce,	*en Lod*, a lot, share,
et Mode, an assembly,	*en Mode*, a fashion,
et Nöd, a neat,	*en Nöd*, need, distress,
	and *en Nöd*, (sharp), a nut,
et Raad, an advice, council,	*en Raad*, a counsellor (title),
et Skrift, a book, work,	*en Skrift*, a handwriting,
et Snært, a stroke of a whip,	*en Snært*, the lash, cord,
et Spand, a team of horses; a span,	*en Spand*, a bucket,
et Söm, an (iron) nail,	*en Söm*, a seam,
et Ting, an assize,	*en Ting*, a thing,
et Tryk, a thrust,	*en Tryk*, print,
et Værge, a weapon,	*en Værge*, a trustee.

Several words are of doubtful gender, as: *en Punkt*, or *et Punkt*, a point; *en Trold*, or *et Trold*, a giant, goblin.**)

The word *et Bogstav*, a letter, was formerly of the common gender, and is still used thus in some biblical and adverbial phrases, as: *Bogstaven ihjelslaaer, men Aanden gjör levende. At tage noget efter Bogstaven*, to take something literally. *Et Sted*, a place, was likewise

---

*) The verb *følge* is not only *to follow*, but also *to attend, accompany one.*

**) Mr. Molbech makes *Trold* of the common gender (*en Trold*) and this has been adopted on his authority by Ferrall and Repp in their Danish-English Dictionary. In Icelandic, however, *Tröll* is neuter, and such, no doubt the gender ought to be also in Danish, when the word denotes *a giant*, or *ogre;* but when it is used as a term of abuse, of *a clamorous scold*, it probably is right, on the authority of several Danish poets to make it: *en Trold.* ED.

of the common gender, and this is preserved in many adverbs, as: *isteden,* in the place (of), *andensteds,* elsewhere, *nogensteds,* anywhere, somewhere, *ingensteds,* nowhere. *En Taage,* a mist, is called *et Taag,* by the common people in the isle of Funen, hence in the cultivated language the phrase: *at gaa i Taaget,* literally: *to walk away in the mist,* i. e. to be thoughtless, heedless, absent, not to have ones wits about one.

10. *Of the declension of nouns.*

The Danish nouns *(Navneord)* admit but of few inflections, viz. the two numbers (mentioned p. 11), and two cases *(Forholdsformer)* in each, viz. the nominative *(Nævneformen)* and the genitive *(Ejeformen)* just as in English; but the formation of these inflections is a good deal more varied.

In this respect the nouns are divided into two orders or declensions, the one more simple in it's inflection, the other more complex. The simple order contains all nouns ending in short *e;* the complex comprizes all the rest. The former follows one invariable rule in forming the numbers and cases, adding always *r* in the plural, and *s* in the genitive of each number, without distinction of gender; the latter is subdivided into three classes, originally distinguishing the three genders, the first forming the plur. like the sing.; the second by adding *-e;* the third by adding *-er.* The following table may serve as a synopsis of the whole system:

	Simple order.	*Complex order.*		
Sing. N.	*e*	class 1. =	cl. 2. =	cl. 3. =
G.	*-s*	*-s*	*-s*	*-s*
Plur. N.	*-r*	=	*-e*	*-er*
G.	*-rs*	*-s*	*-es*	*-ers*

But when the definite article is added, the *s* which forms the genitive is removed from its place immediately behind

the noun and affixed to the article; some rules of euphony must also be observed, when a final *e* of the noun would be immediately followed by the *e* of the article. I shall therefore exhibit the paradigms in their compound or difinite as well as in their simple or indefinite form, in order to give the reader a complete idea of all the inflections, of which they are susceptible.

11. *The simple order.*

Though this order forms only one declension, yet on account of the def. article it may be divided into two classes, the one for the neuter, the other for the common gender.

The nouns: *et Hjærte**), a heart; *en Konge*, a king; *en Dame*, a lady, shall be our paradigms:

Indefinitely.

		neuter class	common class	
Sing.	N.	*et Hjærte,*	*en Konge,*	*en Dame,*
	G.	*et Hjærtes,*	*en Konges,*	*en Dames,*
Plur.	N.	*Hjærter,*	*Konger,*	*Damer,*
	G.	*Hjærters,*	*Kongers,*	*Damers,*

Definitely.

Sing.	N.	*Hjærte-t,*	*Konge-n,*	*Dame-n,*
	G.	*Hjærte-ts,*	*Konge-ns,*	*Dame-ns,*
Plur.	N.	*Hjærter-ne,*	*Konger-ne,*	*Damer-ne,*
	G.	*Hjærter-nes,*	*Konger-nes,*	*Damer-nes.*

In like manner are declined:

et Rige, a kingdom,	*en Löve*, a lion,	*en Lövinde*, a lioness,
et Æble, an apple,	*en Abe*, an ape,	*en Tudse*, a toad,
et Mærke, a mark,	*en Hane*, a cock,	*en Höne*, a hen,
et Löfte, a promise,	*en Have*, a garden,	*en Pære*, a pear,
et Möde, a meeting,	*en Fjende*, an enemy,	*en Krone*, a crown,
et Stykke, a piece,	*en Herre*, a master,	*en Stavelse*, a syllable.

---

*) Molbech following the German analogy writes *Hierte* (from *Herz*). ED.

The final *e* receives the open sound (ė), whenever a consonant is added.

The article loses its original *e* (before the *t* and *n*) everywhere in this declension.

Bónde, a farmer, peasant, changes the vowel in the plural, *Bönder*, *Bönderne*.

Words denoting dignity or rank, and ending in *-e*, lose this *e*, when prefixed to a name, as *Kong Frederik den sjette*, King Frederic the sixth; *Fyrst Edvard*, Prince Edward; *Grev Bernstorff*, Count Bernstorff; *Herr Möller*, Mr. Möller; *Fru Skibsted*, Mrs. Skibsted. There are however several exceptions to this rule, as the word *Kammerherre*, Chamberlain, and female titles in *-inde*, as *Grevinde*, countess, &c. which are never abbreviated.

The old form of the article in the neuter gen. sing. was *-ens* (not *ets*),*) hence instead of *Hjærtets* we say *Hjærtens* in some old phrases, as: *min Hjærtens Ven*, the friend of my heart. Thus also of *Menneske*, man, instead of the usual gen. defin. *Menneskets*, we say *Menneskens*, in the biblical expressions *Menneskens Sön*, the son of man; *Menneskens Börn*, mankind. In the def. plur. we often say *Menneskene* instead of *Menneskerne*.

Derivative words in *dömme* likewise often reject the plural r before the defin. art.; e. g. *Hertugdömmene*, instead of *Hertugdömmerne*.

---

*) It can not, surely, be established as a general rule, that the *old form* was *-ens*, instead of *-ets:* it occurs only i a few words. The old form, i. e. the Icelandic form, was *-ins*, and by contraction *-ns*, when the nominative of the noun terminated in *a*. *Hjærtens* and *Menneskens* may be considered as faint vestiges of the ancient form; but it certainly does not appear that the genitive in *-ens* ever was generally adopted; and this is the less likely to have been the case since the use of the definite article was much less frequent in old Danish e. g. in writings from the 14th and 15th centuries than in modern Danish. ED.

Tilfælde, accident, case, and *Södskende*, brother and sister, do not admit any *-r* in the plural.

Et Öje, an eye, forms *Öjne*, (formerly *Öjen*) in the plur., gen. *Öjnes*, defin. *Öjnene*, *Öjnenes*.

Et Øre, an ear, forms *Øren*, or *Ører*, gen. *Ørens* or *Ørers*, defin. *Ørerne (Ørene)*, *Ørernes (Ørenes)*.

En Oxe, an ox, forms in the plur. *Oxer (Øxne, Øxen)*.

Of the common gender there are two exceptions, viz. *en Penge*, a coin, medal, money, and *en Lige*, an equal; which receive no *r* in the plur., so that the indef. plur. of both is like the sing., and the def. form of *Penge*, *Penge-ne-s*; but *Lige* has no definitive plural, perhaps because it might be confounded with: *Lig-ene*, from *Lig*, a corpse.

12. *The complex order.*

This order must be divided into three classes according to the three manners of forming the plural, though not agreeing exactly with the genders in the modern language. As examples let us take *et Dýr*, an animal, deer; *en Dag*, a day; *en Sag*, a thing.

Indefinitely.

	1st class	2d class	3d class
Sing. N.	*et Dyr*,	*en Dag*,	*en Sag*,
G.	*et Dyrs*,	*en Dags*,	*en Sags*,
Plur. N.	*Dyr*,	*Dage*,	*Sager*,
G.	*Dyrs*,	*Dages*,	*Sagers*,

Definitely.

Sing. N.	*Dyr-et*,	*Dag-en*,	*Sag-en*,
G.	*Dyr-ets*,	*Dag-ens*,	*Sag-ens*,
Plur. N.	*Dyr-ene*,	*Dage-ne*,	*Sager-ne*,
G.	*Dyr-enes*,	*Dage-nes*,	*Sager-nes*.

In like manner are declined:

et Ark, a sheet,	*en Fisk*, a fish,	*en Dyd*, a virtue,
et Slag, a blow,	*en Fugl*, a bird,	*en Frugt*, a fruit,
et Baand, a ribbon,	*en Vej*, a way,	*en Dronning*, a queen,
et Aar, a year,	*en Stav*, a staff,	*en Aand*, a spirit,
et Rór, a rudder,	*en Hest*, a horse,	*en Aa*, a brook,
et Skridt, a pace,	*en Hund*, a dog,	*en Sandhed*, truth.

13. *General remarks.*

In each of these classes there are some words, having a short vowel, followed by a single consonant, which double the final consonant, as soon as a termination beginning with a vowel is added. Ex. of the 1st class *et Kar*, a vessel, def. *Karr-et*, pl. *Karr-ene*; *et Lam*, a lamb, *Lamm-et*, &c.; *et Söm*, an iron nail, *Sömm-et*; *et Led*, a joint, *Ledd-et*; *et Lod*, half an ounce, *Lodd-et*; *et Æg*, an egg, *Ægg-et*. Of the 2d class *en Bæk*, a rivulet, plur. *Bække*, def. *Bækk-en*, pl. *Bække-ne*; *en Blok*, a block, pl. *Blokke*, &c.; *en Hat*, a hat, pl. *Hatte*; *en Top*, a top, pl. *Toppe*; *en Straf*, punishment, pl. *Straffe*; *en Rigdom*, riches, pl. *Rigdomme*; *en Træl*, a slave, pl. *Trælle*; *en Væg*, a wall, pl. *Vægge*. Of the 3d class *en Nød*, a nut, pl. *Nødder*; *en Almanak*, a calender, pl. *Almanakker*; *en Fabrik*, a manufacture pl. *Fabrikker*; *en Ven*, a friend, pl. *Venner*.

When a word of the com. gend. belongs to the first class, it takes of course the com. art. *-en*, &c. instead of the neut. *-et* in the sing. def. & indef. as: *en Fejl*, a fault, *en Fejls*, *Fejl-en*, *Fejlens*, pl. *Fejl-ene*. Thus also *en Sild*, a herring; *en Krœbs*, a crayfish, *en Løg*, an onion; *en Lus*, a louse; *en Mus*, a mouse; *en Sko*, a shoe; *en Aal*, an eel; but *en Alen*, an ell does scarcely admit the affixed definite article at all. Likewise, when a word of the neut. gend. belongs to the 2. or 3. class, which is still more frequently the case, it merely takes the neuter article without any further deviation. Ex. of the 2d cl. *et Land*, a country, *et Lands*, def.

Land-et, *Land-ets*, plur. *Lande-ne*; thus also *et Bord*, table, *Bordet*; *et Hus (Huus)*, a house, *Hus-et*; *et Bjærg* a mountain, *Bjærget*; *et Hav*, a sea, ocean, *Havet*. Of the 3d cl. *et Beviis*, a proof, def. *Bevis-et*, pl. *Bevis-er-ne*; *et Begréb*, a conception, idea, *Begrébet*; *et Papir*, a paper, *Papíret*; *et Biblioték*, a library, *Bibliotéket*; *et Universitét*, a University, *Universitétet*; *et Venskab*, a friendship, *Venskabet*; *et Hoved*, a head, *Hovedet*; *et Hul*, a hole, def. *Hullet*, pl. *Huller-ne*.

For the other remarks that may be required we must consider each of these classes separately.

14. *The first class.*

To this class belong, besides those already mentioned a number of primitive monosyllables of the neuter gender, as:

et Been, a bone,
et Bind, a cover; volume of a book.
et Bröd, a loaf,
et Folk, a people,
et Frö, a seed,
et Faar, a sheep,
et Fæ, a brute,
et Gran, a grain,
et Grýn, a grain of grits,
et Hjul, a wheel,
et Hórn, a horn,
et Jærn, an iron,
et Knæ, a knee,
et Kórn, a grain,
et Krus, a mug,
et Kræ, a creature,
et Kær, a pool,
et Lav (Laug), a guild,
et Lýs, a candle,
et Laag, a lid,
et Löv, a leaf,
et Ord, a word,
et Pund, a pound,
et Sejl, a sail,
et Skaar, a sherd,
et Sprog, a language,
et Straa, a straw,
et Sværd, a sword,
et Staab, *) a cup,
et Saar, a wound,
et Tag, a roof,
et Taarn, a tower,
et Aag, a yoke,
et Ög, a jade.

A considerable number of monosyllabic derivatives of the verbs, cf. p. 15, as: *et Brùd*, a breach; *et Bùd*, a commandment a message; *et Lív*, a life; *et Hik*, a

*) Molbech writes *Stob*. ED.

hickup, sob; *et Kys*, a kiss; *et Haab*, a hope; *et Knæk*, a crack; *et Tag*, a gripe; *et Trin*, a step; *et Slag*, a blow; *et Ridt*, a riding; from *bryde*, break; *byde*, command; *léve*, live; &c.

Some of the primitives change the vowel in the plural, as; *en Gaas*, a goose, pl. *Gæs*, pronounced sharp, whence the def. form sing. *Gaas-en*, pl. *Gæssene*; *en Mand*, a man, pl. *Mænd*; an irregular change takes place in *et Barn*, a child, plur. *Börn*.

15. *The second class.*

There are some primitive neuters of this class, as *et Brev*, a letter, pl. *Breve*; *et Blad*, a leaf, *Blade*; *et Skib*, a vessel, *Skibe*; *et Bad*, a bath, *Bade*; *et Vand*, water, *Vande*; *et Skab*, a cupboard, *Skabe*; but by far the greater number are original masculines, as; *en Baad*, a boat, (Icel *bátr*), plur. *Baade*; *en Krop*, a body (Icel. *kroppr*), *Kroppe*; *en Skik*, a custom, *Skikke*; *en Dreng*, a boy, (Icel. *drengr*), *Drenge*; *en Dal*, a valley, (Icel. *dalr*), *Dale*; *en Bom*, a bar, *Bomme*; *en Steen*, a stone, (Icel. *steinn*), *Stene*, *en Stilk*, a stalk, *Stilke*; and some few original feminines, as *en Lov*, a law, pl. *Love*; *en Sol*, a sun, *Sole*.

Some dissyllables in *el*, *er*, suffer a contraction in the plur. as *et Kammer*, a chamber, closet, pl. *Kamre*, def. *Kammer-et*, pl. *Kamre-ne*; *et Offer*, a sacrifice, pl. *Offere* or *Ofre*; *en Ager*, a field, pl. *Agre*; *en Finger*, a finger, pl. *Fingre*; *en Hammer*, a hammer, pl. *Hamre*; *en Engel*, an angel, pl. *Engle*; *en Himmel*, heaven, sky, pl. *Himle*. The def. art. rarely requires this contraction in the sing. as: *Himlen*, in the acceptation *providence*, otherwise *Himmelen*, *Hammeren* &c.

Masc. derivatives in *-er* do not admit the contraction in the plur., but constantly reject the plural termination *-e*, when the art. is affixed, as *en Grœker*, a greek, pl.

Grækere, def. sing. *Grækeren*, pl. *Grækerne*, thus also *Skræder*, taylor; *Væver*, weaver, &c.

Some few change the vowel in the pl.

en Fader, pl. *Fædre*; *en Moder*, pl. *Mödre*;
en Bröder, pl. *Brödre*; *en Datter* (*Dotter*), pl. *Döttre*.

16. *The third class.*

contains some few primitive neuters, as *et Træ*, a tree, pl. *Træer*; *et Töj*, a stuff, pl. *Tójer*; *et Sted*, a place, pl. *Stèder*; and all derivatives in *-i*, *eri*, as *et Parti*, a faction, party, pl. *Partier*; *et Bryggeri*, a brewhouse, pl. *Bryggerier*; *et Bogtrykkeri*, a printing-office, pl. *Bogtrykkerier*. Also some original masculines, as *Gud*, god, pl. *Guder*; *en Ret*, a court of justice; a dish, pl *Retter*; *en Le*,*) a scythe, pl. *Leer*; *en Sti*, a path, pl. *Stier*; *en By*, a town, a village, pl. *Byer*; *en Bekjendt*, an acquaintance, pl. *Bekjendter*.

But especially a great number of original feminines, as: *en Saga*, an old Icelandic history, pl. *Sagaer*; *en Bro*, a bridge, pl. *Broer*; *en Frø*, a frog, pl. *Frøer*; *en Ö*,**) an island, pl. *Öer*; *en Sky*, a cloud, pl. *Skyer*; *en Gjed*, a goat, pl. *Gjeder*; *en Bön*, a petition, pl. *Bönner*; *en Plads*, a place, pl. *Pladser*; *en Art*, a kind, pl. *Arter*; *en Ært*; a pea, pl. *Ærter*; *en Mast*, a mast, pl. *Master*. Likewise all derivative nouns in *hed*, as: *en Godhed*, a favor, pl. *Godheder*.

In like manner most foreign words of the three genders, terminating in consonants, as: *et Patènt*, a letter patent, pl. *Patènter*; *(en) Studènt*, pl. *Studènter*; *(en)*

---

*) Professor Rask spells *Le* pl. *Leer* which makes the word regular; still the anomalous spelling *Lee* (in the singular number) is most frequently used; but although it would be consistent with this practice to add a third *e* for the affixed def. article, and also for the plural, still this is never done. ED.

**) Ö is also frequently spelt Öe. ED.

Prest, *) a priest, pl. *Prester*; *(en) Kaptejn*, pl. *Kaptejner*, a captain (more frequently spelt *Capitain* pl. *Capitainer)*; *Patron*, pl. *Patron-er*; *Religión*, pl. *Religión-er*; *Bastión-er*; *(en) Admirál*, pl. *Admirál-er*; *Linial-er*, ruler-s; *Veterán-er*; *Husár-er*, hussar-s; *Guvernør-er (Gouverneur-er)*, Governor-s; *Sekretærer*, Secretary; *Kollektør-er*, Collector; *Invalid-er*, Invalid; *Uniform-er*, Uniform-s.

Those in *or* from the Latin remove the tone; as *en Assèssor*, judge in a court of justice, pl. *Assessórer*; *Revisor*, revisor, pl. *Revisórer*; those with a sharp vowel in the last syllable, double the consonant following, as: *(en) Brig*, a brig, pl *Brig-ger*; *(et) Skaberak-ker*, saddle cloth, caparison-s; *(en) Supplik*, a petition, pl. *Supplikker; (en) Republik*, republic, pl. *Republik-ker; (en) Fregat*, a frigate, pl. *Fregat-ter; (en) Kadèt*, a young man of a military academy, pl. *Kadèt-ter* (also *Cadet*, *Cadet-ter); (en) Rekrùt*, a recruit, pl. *Rekrùt-ter; (et) Lexikon*, a dictionary, pl. *Lexikon-ner.*

Dissyllables in *el*, *en*, are contracted in the plural. Ex. *en Kjedel*, a kettle, pl. *Kjedler; en Nøgel*, a key, pl. *Nøgler; en Hassel*, a hazle, pl. *Hasler; en Artikkel*, an article, pl. *Artikler; en Titel*, a title, pl. *Titler; et Æsel*, an ass, pl. *Æsler; et Asen.*, an ass, pl. *Asner; et Væsen*, a being, pl. *Væsner*, or *Væsener; en Aften*, an evening, pl *Aftner*, or *Aftener*. Even sometimes in the def. sing. as *Kjedlen, Nøglen, Asnet, Aftnen*. Those in *en* remain sometimes uncontracted, as: *Asener*, *Væsener.*

A number of words of this class change their vowel in the plural, as:

en And, a duck, pl. *Ænder*, *en Ko*, a cow, pl. *Köer*,
en Tand, a tooth, *Tænder*; *en So*, a sow, *Söer*;
en Stand, an estate, *Stænder*; *en Nat*, a night, *Nætter*;
en Stang, a perch, *Stænger*; *en Fod*, a foot, *Födder*;

*) Molbech and others spell *Præst* and follow in this instance no analogy whatever. RD.

en Tang, tongs, *Tænger*;
en Stad, a city, *Stæder*;
en Bod, a fine, *Böder*;
en Bog, a book, *Böger*;
en Klo, a claw, *Klöer*;
en Rod, a root, *Rödder*;
en Taa, a toe, *Tæer*;
en Raa, a yard, *Rær*;
en Haand, a hand, *Hænder*;
en Vaand, a wand, *Vænder*.

17. *General remarks.*

Some nouns, though possessing a plural in proper form, are used in the sing. collectively or nearly as plurals, e. g. *Mand*: speaking of soldiers, we say *"femten Tusind Mand,"* not *Mænd*, fifteen thousand men; even *Fod*, feet, as a measure; *Fisk*; fish; *Lax*, salmon; *Steen*, stones; *Mursteen*, bricks, considered as materials.

Some nouns have no plural; such are the names of metals, earths, herbs, vegetables, virtues, vices, qualities, and several sorts of provision, as:

Kobber-et, copper;
Bly-et, lead;
Tin-net, pewter;
Leer, *Leret*, clay;
Sand-et, sand;
Stöv-et, dust;
Hved-en, wheat;
Rug-en, rye;
Havre-n, oats;
Hö-et, hay;
Meel, *Melet*, flower;
Honning-en, honey;
Vox-et, wax;
Klogskab-en, prudence;
List-en, cunning;
Ære-n, honor;
Skam-men; shame;
Forfald-et, hindrance, impediment, accident.

But in other significations some of them receive a plural, as: *Kobbere*, copper-plates; &c.

Some have no singular number, as: *Briller or Glar-öjne*, spectacles; *Buxer*, breeches; *Pantalonger*, Pantaloons.

When the noun that is governed in the genitive, is expressed by more than one word, the *-s* is only added to the last of them, as: *Kongen af Danmarks Lande*, the king of Denmark's countries (possessions).

Nouns signifying inanimate substances generally form their gen. like the English by *af*, of, as: *Taget af Huset*, the roof of the house; *Masten af Skibet*, the mast of the ship.

Though there be no terminations for more cases than the nomin. and genit. in the declension of Danish nouns, yet not only the accusative, but even the dative is usually expressed without any preposition; these two cases being distinguished from the nominative by the position in which they are placed to the verb. The nominative usually precedes, the dative or respective case*) follows next to the verb, and the accusative, expressing the object, takes the last place, as: *Forfatteren har tilegnet Dronningen sit Verk*, the author has dedicated his work to the queen. Here *Forfatteren* is the nomin. *Dronningen* the dat. and *Verk* the accusative, (according to the Latin terminology), though not distinguished by any particular termination or particle.

There are also in Danish some remains of old terminations of cases, especially of the dative, governed by some preposition, and used in certain adverbial phrases. Ex. *i Lave*, in order; *af Lave*, out of order, out of (ones) wits; from *Lav*, settled state, right order; *i Tide*, in due time, from *Tid*, time; *at have i Hænde*, to have in (ones) hands, i. e. in actual possession, from *Haand*, (the Icel. dat is *hendi*); &c. In such cases the prep. *til*, to, usually governs the genitive, as: *til Bords*, at table; *til Lands*, by land; *til Huse hos*, lodged with, (*húsa* is the Icel. gen. plur.)

ADJECTIVES.

18. *Of their declension.*

The declension of the Danish adjectives (*Tillægsord*) is very simple. Like the nouns they have both a definite and an indefinite form: the former always terminates in *e*, and neither distinguishes genders nor numbers; the

*) *Respective case* is Rask's technical term for the Dative: in Danish he calls it *Hensynsform*. ED.

latter appears to be the original one, it distinguishes the two numbers and, in the singular, the two genders, neuter and common, in the plural it forms both genders alike, and always terminates in *e*; consequently it is here like the def. form, and thus all the terminations of a regular adjective amount but to three. As a paradigm let us take *hvid*, white, together with the nouns *Papir*, paper, and *Farve*, color:

Indefinite form

Sing. Nom.	*hvidt Papir,*	*hvid Farve,*
Gen.	*hvidt Papirs,*	*hvid Farves,*
Plur. Nom.	*hvide Papirer,*	*Farver,*
Gen.	*hvide Papirers,*	*Farvers.*

Definite form

Sing. Nom.	*det hvide Papir,*	*den hvide Farve,*
Gen.	*det hvide Papirs,*	*den hvide Farves,*
Plur. Nom.	*de hvide Papirer,*	*Farver,*
Gen.	*de hvide Papirers,*	*Farvers.*

The indefinite article has no influence on the inflection of the adjective as:

et gòdt Barn, a good child,
et gòdt Barns, of a good child,
en gòd Mand, an honest man;
en gòd Mands, of an honest man;
pl. *gòde Bòrn,* good children &c.

In like manner are declined:

sygt, syg-e, sick;	*gålt, gål-e,* foolish;
ærligt, ærlig-e, honest;	*heelt, heel, hele,* whole;
sandt, sand-e, true;	*seent, seen, sene,* slow;
dröjt, dröj-e, lasting;	*trygt, tryg-ge,* sure, safe;
fuldt, fuld-e, full;	*smukt, smuk-ke,* fine;
ungt, ung-e, young;	*grönt, grön-ne,* green.

Adjectives ending in *el*, *en*, *er* form their plur. and definite form in *-le*, *-ne*, *-re*, with elision of the preceding *e*, as:

ædelt, ædel, ædle, noble; *gammelt, gammel, gamle,* old;
nögent, nögen, nögne, naked; *sikkert, sikker, sikre,* safe;

Participles in *-en*, reject the *-n* before the neuter *t*, as:

fundet, funden, fundne, found; *revet, reven, révne;* torn;

Some adjectives do not distinguish the plur. from the com. gend. sing. as:

blaat, blaa, blaa, blue; *frit, fri, fri,* (*frie*), free;
graat, graa, graa, grey; *nyt, ny, ny,* (*nye*), new;*)

Some others terminating in a radical *t* or *sk* do not distinguish the genders, as:

kort, kort-e, short; *engelsk, engelsk-e,* English;
dobbelt, dobbelt-e, double; *bekjendt, bekjendt-e,* known;
dansk, dansk-e, Danish; *glad, glad-e,* glad;

Dissyllabic participles in *et* of the 1st conjugation, change this termination to *ede* in the plural and def. form, as: *elsket, elsket, elskede,* beloved.

Several adj. terminating in vowels do not admit of any inflection as:

ringe, ringe, ringe, insignificant, mean; *ædru, ædru, ædru,* sober;
tro, tro, tro, faithful; *bly, bly, bly,* bashful;

Adjectives when used absolutely, that is without or instead of nouns, receive the usual termination *-s* in the gen. especially in the definite form, as: *et hvidts, en hvids*, of a white (one, man &c.), pl. *hvides*, of white (ones); def. *det hvides, den hvides, de hvides* (of the white). Also *det ringes, den ringes, de ringes.*

Wholly irregular is: *lidet, liden* (or in both genders *lille,*) little, plur. *smaa*, def. *det, den lille,* pl. *de smaa. Meget, megen*, much, has neither a plur. nor a definite form.

---

*) It is however still a very common practice to give these a mute *e* in the plural. Mr. Molbech e. g. has in his dictionary *graa* pl. *graae*; *frie* and *nye* which Prof. Rask has put only in a parenthesis is, I think, always written in the plural of these adjectives. ED.

19. *Of the degrees of comparison.*

The qualities denoted by the adjectives may be of different degrees, and these degrees are sometimes expressed by terminations.

The positive degree *(den første Grad)* is the adjective itself, of which we have treated already. The comparative *(den højere Grad)* is expressed in Danish by adding *ere;* the superlative *(den højeste Grad)* by adding *-est*, as: *hvidere, hvidest, kortere, kortest.*

The comparative does not admit of any further inflection, being indeclinable, like the positives in *e* (as *ringe*, e. g, *et lærd-ere Fruentimmer*, a more learned woman, *en lærdere Mand, Dame* &c. a more learned man, lady &c., *lærdere Personer*, more learned persons; in like manner def. *det lærdere, den lærdere, de lærdere.* When absolute, it may however (like *ringe)* receive the s in the genit. case, as: *en lærdere*, pl. *lærderes*, def. *den lærderes, de lærderes.*

The superlative distinguishes the def. form from the indef. by adding *e*, but is otherwise indeclinable. The indef. form is rarely used except as an absolute predicate after the verb, as: *Sneen er hvidest*, the snow is (the) whitest; *hvem var højest*, who was (the) tallest; it never occurs in the plural. The def. form is like the def. positive, as: *det hvideste Papir, den hvideste Farve, de hvideste Vægge; det lærdeste Fruentimmer, den lærdeste Mand, de lærdeste Personer;* gen. absol. *det, den, de hvidestes.*

In like manner are regularly formed:

syg-t, syg-ere, syg-est;	*gal-t, galere, galest;*
sand-t, sandere, sandest;	*seen-t, senere, senest;*
dröj-t, dröjere, dröjest;	*tryg t, tryggere, tryggest;*
fuld-t, fuldere, fuldest;	*smuk-t, smukkere, smukkest;*
kort, kortere, kortest;	*fri-t, friere, friest;*
glad, gladere, gladest;	*ny-t, nyere, nyest.*

Those contracted in the positive degree are also contracted in the other degrees, as far as they admit these forms. Ex.

ædel-t, ædlere, ædlest; sikker-t, sikrere, sikrest;
beskjeden-t,) beskjednere, beskjednest,* modest; &c.

Derivative adjectives in *ig* and *lig*, admit only *-st* (not *est*) in the superlative, as:

ærlig-t, ærligere, ærligst, honest; *værdig-t, værdigere, værdigst,* worthy; &c.

The following are irregular in their degrees:

lang-t, længere, længst, long; *mange* plur., *flere, fleest,* many;
ung-t, yngre, yngst, young; *god-t, bedre, bedst,* good;
stör-t, större, störst; great; *ond-t* / *slem-t* } *værre, værst,* evil, bad;
lidet, -en, mindre, mindst, small;
smaa, (plur.), *smærre,* (*smærrest*); *gammel-t, ældre, ældst,* old;
faa, (plur.), *færre, færrest,* few; (*nær-t,*) *nærmere, nærmest,* near;
meget, en, mere, meest, much;

National adjectives and several others are used only in the positive degree, as: *spansk* Spanish; *islandsk,* Icelandic; thus also:

heel, whole; *enkelt,* simple;
östre, eastern; *sydre* (*söndre*), southern;
vestre, western; *nördre, nörre,* northern.

Some adjectives are defective in the positive degree, and some even in the compar. being originally adverbs or prepositions, as:

(*ned,* down), *nedre, nederst;* (*for,* fore) — *forrest;*
(*over,* over), *övre, överst;* (*bag,* behind) — *bagerst;*
(*ud,* out), *ydre, yderst;* (*för,* before) — *först;*
(*ind,* in), *indre, inderst;* (*siden,* afterwards) — *sidst;*
ene, alone — *det eneste;* (*mellem,* between) — *mellemst;*

Participles very rarely admit the inflection of degree, but in order to express the same ideas, they take before them *meer* (*mere*) more, in the comparative, and *meest,* most, in the superlative as:

---

*) Molbech an others write *beskeden.* ED.

godgjörende, charitable, *meer, meest godgjörende;*
elsket, beloved, *meer, meest elsket;*
drukken, drunk, *meer, meest drukken;*
skjelöjet, squinting, *meer, meest skjelöjet;*

A diminution of degree, having no appropriate termination, is always expressed by prefixing the adverbs *mindre*, less, and *mindst*, least, as:

mindre, mindst hvid-t, less, least white;
mindre, mindst syg-t, less, least sick;
mindre, mindst elske-t, less, least beloved;
mindre, mindst drukken, less, least drunk, &c.

PRONOUNS.

20. The personal pronouns, *(personlige Stedord)*, in Danish as in English, have also an objective case (accusative and dative), but are sometimes defective in the genitive, as:

	1st person.	2d person.	3d person. recipr.	masc.	fem.
S. Nom.	*jeg*, I,	*du*, thou,	=	*han*, *he*,	*hun* she;
Object.	*mig*, *me*,	*dig*, thee,	*sig*,	*ham*, him,	*hende*, her,
Gen.	=	=	=	*hans*, his,	*hendes*, her,
P. Nom.	*vi*, we,	*I*, you,	=	=	=
Object.	*os*, us,	*eder* (*jer*), you,	*sig*,	=	=
Gen.	*vores*, ours,	*eders*(*jer*).yours,	=	=	=

The plur. of *han*, *hun*, is supplied for both genders by *de*, *dem*, *deres*, being the plur. of the demonstr.

Selv, self, is used as in English to make the two 1st pers. reciprocal, as: *mig selv*, *os selv*, &c. it is also frequently added to the nominatives of all three personal pronouns and to the recip. in order to make them more expressive, as: *jeg selv*, I myself; *vi selv*, we ourselves; *sig selv*, himself, themselves. *Han selv* means also the master of the house, *hun selv*, the lady of the house, pl. *de selv*, master and mistress. But *selv* is never added to the genit.

21. The Genit. sing. of the two first persons and of the recipr. form of the third is supplied by the possessive pronouns *(Ejestedord)*, which are declined like indef. adjectives, thus:

	neut.	com.	plur.	
of the 1st pers.	*mit,*	*min,*	*mine,*	my, mine;
— 2d pers.	*dit,*	*din,*	*dine,*	thy, thine;
— recipr.	*sit,*	*sin,*	*sine,*	its, his, her own.

Even from the plurals possessives are formed thus:

of the 1st pers.	*vort,*	*vor,*	*vore,*	our, ours;
— 2d pers.	*(jert),*	*jer,*	*jere,*	your, yours;
— recipr.	*sit,*	*sin,*	*sine,*	their own, theirs.

The last however is much disputed, the Grammarians commonly limiting the use of *sit*, *sin* to those cases, where the nominative is singular; but being derived from *sig*, which is allowed to be used also of a plural, it appears to have just claims to the same right, and thus it is used in Icelandic and Swedish, and even oftentimes in Danish authors, especially the elder. Nay, the Latin use of the corresponding word *suum*, *suus*, *sua*, seems to justify the extension we have given it.

The Gen. *vores* is used absolutely, like the Engl. *ours*, but the possessive *vort*, *vor*, in connection with nouns substantive like *our:* but *eders* is commonly used in both cases by authors, so that *jért*, *jer*, rarely occurs but in common conversation.

Eget, *egen*, *égne*, own, is used as a sort of reciprocal possessive, corresponding to the personal recipr. *selv*, e. g. *mit eget*, my own, *vort eget*, our own, *hans égen*, his own, *hendes egne*, her own.

22. The neuter gender of the third person, as also its plural in all genders, are supplied by the demonstrative pronoun *(bestemmende Stedord) det*, *den*, which is thus declined.

	neut.	com.
Sing. Nom.	*det,*	*den,*
Obj.	*det,*	*den,*
Gen.	*dets,*	*dens,*
Plur. Nom.		*de,*
Obj.		*dem,*
Gen.		*deres.*

The plur. of this word is used in common conversation to a single person, or to several, like the English *you*, and in this case it is always written with a capital letter for the sake of distinction *): *De*, *Dem*, *Deres.*

But in connection with a substantive it is declined like the def. art. of the adjectives, from which it is distinguished merely by a peculiar stress or emphasis, when used demonstratively thus:

Sing. Nom.	*dèt Bórd,*	*dèn Stôl,*
Gen.	*dèt Bórds,*	*dèn Stôls,*
Plur. Nom.	*dé Bórde,*	*dé Stôle,*
Gen.	*dé Bórdes,*	*dé Stôles,*

The remaining demonstratives have no more than these three inflections, viz.

dette,	*denne,*	pl. *disse,* this;
hint,	*hin,*	— *hine,* that;
saadant,	*suadan,*	— *saadanne,* such;
sligt,	*slig,*	— *slige,* such;

samme, same, is indeclinable, being properly the def. form of and old demonstr. *sam-t,* though often used without the article. Only, like the other demonstrs, it receives the genit. termination *-s*, when standing absolute, as *dettes, hins, saadannes, sammes* &c.

---

*) The capital letter is considered as a mark of respect, and it would be held to be an insult to write this pronoun, when used in addressing another person, with a small letter. This fashion is originally German, for the Germans also write "*Sie*" and "*Ihnen*" with a capital. ED.

23. Relative pronouns *(henvisende Stedord)* are:

der, who, that, used only in the nominative without distinction of gender and number;

som, who, whom, that, used both as nominative and object, but likewise without distinction of gender and number.

Both interrogative *(spörgende)* and relative, are:

hvad, what, used of things, and *hvem*, (formerly in the nom. *hvo)*, who, whom, of persons, the latter even sometimes as a plural;

hvilket, hvilken, pl. *hvilke*, which.

To all these relatives and interrogatives the only abs. genitive is *hvis* for both numbers;

hvordant, hvordan, hvordanne, how (Lat. *quale, is)* is scarcely ever used in the objective or genitive.

24. Indefinite pronouns *(ubestemte Stedord)* are:

der, it, or there, which expresses a perfectly indefinite subject*), especially with passive verbs, as: *der siges at han kommer hertil*, it is said, or they say that he is coming hither; *der er næppe nogen som troer det*, there is scarcely anybody who believes it.

man, one, a person, (the French *on*), as: *man maa finde sig deri*, one must put up with it; *man taler meget*

---

*) Professor Rask often uses the term "Subject" in the sense which it frequently has with the German grammarians; but which is little known in England. What Rask calls "Subject", the English Grammarians always call "nominative". A Dane asks: "Hvad er Subjectet i denne Sætning?" In English he must express the same question thus: "What is the nominative in this proposition?" English scholars are so little accustomed to the continental school term *"subjectum grammaticale"*, that they would, I think, better understand the Greek term, *ὑποκείμενον*, than "subject", as expressive of that notion wich they use to call "nominative." ED.

derom, they speak much about it. This word is merely used as nominat. or subject; in the objective case we sometimes say *En*, one, instead of it, and in the gen. *Ens*, speaking of ourselves.

noget, *nogen*, pl. *nogle* or *nogen*, some; any;
(*somt*) = pl. *somme*, some people;
intet, *ingen*, pl. *ingen*, nothing, nobody, none;
alt, *al*, pl. *alle*, all, every;
hvert, *hver*, (without a pl.) every; also *ethvert*, *enhver*;
ingenting (ingen Ting), nothing; *alting*, every thing;
et andet, *en anden*, pl. *andre*; another, somebody else;

this last word is also used definitely without changing its form, as: *det andet Bord*, the other table, &c.

Hinanden, each other, speaking of two;

hverandre, one another, speaking of a greater number.

25. The numeral pronouns *(Talordene)* are of two sorts, viz.

a) cardinals (*Mængdetal*);	*b*) ordinals (*Ordenstal*).
1. *eet*, *een*, one,	*det*, *den förste*,
2. *to*, two,	*det andet*, *den anden*,
3. *tre*, three,	*det*, *den tredie*,
4. *fire*, four,	— *fjerde*,
5. *fem*, five,	— *femte*,
6. *sex*, six,	— *sjette*,
7. *syv*, seven,	— *syvende*,
8. *aatte* (otte), *) eight,	— *attende, [ottende]*,
9. *ni*, nine,	— *niende*,
10. *ti*, ten,	— *tiende*,
11. *èlleve*, eleven,	— *èllefte*,
12. *tolv*, twelve,	— *tolvte*,
13. *tretten*, thirteen,	— *trettende*,
14. *fjörten*, fourteen,	— *fjörtende*,
15. *femten*, fifteen,	— *femtende*,

*) The usual spelling certainly is "*otte*" and Molbech has no other. Prof. Rasks spelling however is supported both by pronunciation and etymology, the Icelandic word being "*átta*". ED.

16. *sejsten* [commonly *sexten*], sixteen,	*den, det sejstende* [commonly *sextende*],	
17. *sytten*, seventeen,	—	*syttende*,
18. *atten*, eighteen,	—	*attende*,
19. *nitten*, nineteen,	—	*nittende*,
20. *tyve*, twenty,	—	*tyvende*,
21. *een og tyve*, twenty one &c.	—	*een-og-tyvende*, twenty first,
30. *trédive*, thirty,	—	*trédifte* [commonly *trediv-te*], thirtieth,
40. *fyrretyve*, forty,	—	*fyrgetyvende*, fortieth,
50. *halvtrés*, *halvtrésinds-tyve* [commonly *halv-tredsindstyve*], fifty,	—	*halvtresindstyvende* [commonly *halvtredsindstyven-de*], fiftieth,
60. *tres*, *tresindstyve*, [commonly *tredsindstyve* and *tredsinds-tyvende*,] sixty,	—	*tresindstyvende*, sixtieth,
70. *halvfjèrs*, *halvfjersindstyve*, seventy,	—	*halvfjersindstyvende*, seventieth,
80. *firs*, *firsindstyve* eighty,	—	*firsindstyvende*, eightieth,
90. *halvfems* *halvfemsindstyve* ninety,	—	*halvfemsindstyvende*, ninetieth,
100. *hundrede*, hundred,	—	*hundrede*, hundredth,
101. *hundrede og eet, een*,	—	*hundrede-og-förste*, &c.
200. *to hundrede*, two hundred,	—	*to hundrede*, two hundred,
1000. *tusinde*, thousand,	—	*tusinde*, thousandth.

The abbreviated forms, *halvtrés*, *trés*, *halvfjers*, *firs*, *halvfems*, are used when the numeral stands absolute, or without a noun, consequently applied in counting; the longer forms, *halvtresindstyve* &c., in connection with nouns.

The words *hundrede*, *tusinde*, being originally nouns substantive, are sometimes written with a capital letter, and the indef. art. as: *et Hundrede*, *et Tusinde*, or abbreviated, *et Hundred*, *et Tusind*.

En Million, a million, *Billión*, *Trillión*, &c. are also nouns substantive, and constantly used as such.

There are also some other numeral nouns, as:

et Par, a couple, a pair, a brace;
et Deger, a dicher;
en Snees, a score;
et Dosin, a dozen;
en Skok, three score.
en Ol, four score.

Some numeral adjectives are stiled multiplicatives by the Latin Grammarians, viz.

enkelt, single, simple;
tredobbelt, triple;
dobbelt, double;
firdobbelt, quadruple, &c.

But there are no numeral adverbs in Danish like *once*, *twice*, *thrice*, instead of them we constantly use the noun *Gang*, time, with a cardinal or ordinal prefixed, as:

een Gang, once,
to Gange, twice,
tre Gange, thrice.
förste Gang, the first time;
anden Gang, the second time;
tredie Gang, the third time, &c.

We even say: *een ad Gangen*, one at a time; *to ad Gangen*, two at a time, &c.

The fractions are thus expressed:

halvt, halv, halve, half, is a regular adj. indef. & def.
but $\frac{1}{2}$ is read *en halv*,
$1\frac{1}{2}$ — *halvtandet, halvanden*, or *eet og et halvt, een og en halv*;
$2\frac{1}{2}$ — *halvtredie*, or *to og en halv*;
$3\frac{1}{2}$ — *halvfjerde*, or *tre og en halv*; &c.
$\frac{1}{3}$ — *en Trediedeel*,
$1\frac{1}{3}$ — *een og en Trediedeel*,
$\frac{2}{3}$ — *to Trediedele*,
$\frac{1}{4}$ — *en Fjerdedeel*,
$\frac{2}{4}$ — *to Fjerdedele*,
$\frac{3}{4}$ — *tre Fjerdedele*, &c.

VERBS.

26. *Introductory observations.*

The inflection of the Danish verbs *(Gjerningsord)* is very simple, and like that of the English; we distinguish however an active and a passive voice (*Hand-*

leformen & Lideformen), but the latter is always formed by merely adding the termination s or *es*.

The verb itself has, properly speaking, three modes viz. the indicative *(den fremsættende Maade)*; the optative *(den önskende)* and the imperative *(den bydende)*; besides the derived forms: the infinitive *(Navneformen)*, and the participles *(Tillægsformerne)*, being two as in English, and of the same denominations. The indicative has two tenses *(Tidsformer)*, viz. the present *(Nutiden)* and the past *(Datiden)*, the other modes and forms have only one tense each. The present and past of the indicative and the passive partic. are the most important parts of the verbs.

With respect to the formation of these inflections, the verbs are divided into two great orders *(Hovedarter)*, the one more simple and regular, the other more complex and irregular; each of them however is subdivided into different classes according to the formation of the past tense of the indic. active. The simple order forms only one conjugation, it always terminates the past in *de* or *te*, and has consequently more than one syllable; it has three sub-classes: the 1st trisyllabic in the past, & terminating in *-ede*; the 2d dissyllabic, and terminating in *te* (or *de*); the 3d also dissyllabic, and terminating in *de* (or *te*) but changing, besides, the vowel in the radical syllable. In the complex order the past tense is always monosyllabic having no termination, or affix, but ending in the last radical letter, and usually changing the vowel. It may be divided into two conjugations, the one usually preserving the original vowel of the present in the participle passive; the other changing the vowel not only in the past tense, but also in the participle. Each of these conjugations has also three sub-classes according to the vowels adopted in the past. The following synopsis may give the reader a view of the whole system:

The simple order or 1st conjugation:

	pres.	past.	part. pass.
cl. 1.	*jeg klager,*	*klagede,*	*klaget,* complain;
cl. 2.	*jeg brænder,*	*brændte,*	*brændt,* burn;
cl. 3.	*jeg følger,*	*fulgde,**)	*fulgt,* accompany;

The complex order, 2d conjugation.

cl. 1.	*jeg beder,*	*bad,*	*bedet* (*bédt*), pray;
cl. 2.	*jeg faar,* [commonly *faaer*]	*fik,*	*faaet,* get;
cl. 3.	*jeg lader,*	*lod,*	*ladet,* let;

The 3d conjugation.

cl. 1.	*jeg slipper,*	*slap* (pl. *sluppe*),	*sluppet, -en,* escape;
cl. 2.	*jeg river,*	*rev* (— *reve*),	*revet, -en,* tear;
cl. 3.	*jeg byder,*	*böd* (— *bude*),	*budet, -en,* invite.

The persons are only distinguished by the pronouns or other words added, never hy peculiar terminations; even the two numbers are often formed alike, or confounded in common conversation, even when distinguished in the written language.

The imperative has no more than the second person in either number.

The passive voice admits of no distinction of numbers or persons, but merely of tenses and modes.

27. *The first conjugation.*

As paradigms of this order let us take, *jeg elsker,* I love; *jeg hörer,* I hear; *jeg lægger,* I lay, which are thus inflected.

---

*) Rask and some other authors write "fulgde" which, no doubt, is etymologically correct, for the Icelandic has "*fylgdi*" Molbech however writes "*fulgte*" and such certainly is the usual spelling. Modern Danish looks much more to German analogies than to Icelandic etymology: the German has "*folgte*" in the past. hence Danish "fulgte". ED.

The active voice.

Indicative mode.

	1st class	2d class	3d class
Pres. Sing.	*elsker,*	*hörer,*	*lægger,*
Plur.	*elske,*	*höre,*	*lægge,*
Past. Sing.	*elskede,*	*hörte,*	*lagde,*
Plur.	*elskede,*	*hörte,*	*lagde,*

Optative mode.

Pres. Sing.	*elske!*	*höre!*	*lægge!*
Plur.	*elske!*	*höre!*	*lægge!*

Imperative mode.

Pres. Sing. 2.	*elsk (du)*	*hör,*	*læg,*
Plur. 2.	*elsker (I)*	*hörer,*	*lægger,*

Derived forms.

Infin.	*(at) elske,*	*(at) höre,*	*(at) lægge,*
Partic.	*elskende,*	*hörende,*	*læggende,*

The passive voice.

Indicative mode.

Pres.	*elskes,*	*höres,*	*lægges,*
Past.	*elskedes,*	*hörtes,*	*lagdes,*

Optative or Imperative mode.

Pres.	*elskes,*	*höres,*	*lægges,*

Derived forms.

Infin.	*(at) elskes,*	*(at) höres,*	*(at) lægges,*
Part. Sing.	*elsket,*	*hört,*	*lagt,*
Plur.	*elskede;*	*hörte;*	*lagte.*

28. Of the 1st class are:

vander,	*vandede,*	*vandet,*	water;
strander,	*strandede,*	*strandet,*	strand;
*vænter,**)	*væntede,*	*væntet,*	expect;
henter,	*hentede,*	*hentet,*	fetch;
agter,	*agtede,*	*agtet,*	intend;
arbejder,	*arbejdede,*	*arbejdet,*	work, &c.

*) There is no doubt whatever that Rask is right in writing *vænte* according to the Icelandic etymology *v æ n t a*. The common spelling *vente* is barbarous. ED.

Some verbs of this class having three consonants after the first vowel, preserve the final *e* in the sing. of the imperative, as: *handle som du vil behandles*, do as you will be done by; *forandre kun det*, you had better alter that, (not *handl*, *forandr*).

Verbs that have no consonant after the first vowel are of three sorts, viz. 1) those in *íer*, *úer* are wholly regular; 2) those in *ýer*, throw away the *e* in the pl. of the pres. and in the infin. 3) the rest are monosyllabic in the pres. tense throughout, and in the infinit. thus:

bier,	*bie*,	*biede*,	*biet*,	wait;
suer,	*sue*,	*suede*,	*suet*,	suck;
flyer,	*fly*, *)	*flyede*,	*flyet*,	flee;
skyer,	*sky*,	*skyede*,	*skyet*,	shun;
snér,	*sne*,	*sneede*,	*sneet*,	snows;
tér,	*te*,	*teede*,	*teet*,	show;
bór,	*bo*,	*boede*,	*boet*,	dwell;
trór,	*tro*,	*troede*,	*troet*,	believe;
naar,	*naa*,	*naaede*,	*naaet*,	reach;
saaer,	*saa*,	*saaede*,	*saaet*,	sow;
strör,	*strö*,	*ströede*,	*ströet*,	strew.

29. Of the 2d class are:

tænker,	*tænkte*,	*tænkt*,	think;
taber,	*tabte*,	*tabt*,	lose;
kjender,	*kjendte*,	*kjendt*,	know;
vender,	*vendte*,	*vendt*,	turn;
lærer,	*lærte*,	*lært*,	learn, teach;
volder,	*voldte*,	*voldt*,	occasion;

Several verbs are inflected either according to this, or the 1st class; in such cases the contracted or shorter form of the past is the most usual, as: *jeg kalder*, I call, *kaldede*, or *kaldte*, called; *hælder*, incline, or pour in, *hældede* or *hældte*; *taler*, speak, *talede*, or *talte*.

---

*) Molbech writes *flye*, *skye*, *snee*, *tee*, *boe*, *troe*, *naae*, *saae*, *ströe*; but in all these the final *e* is mute. ED.

Some authors give this class *-de* in the past, as: *hörde*, *földe*, felt, *tænkde*, *tabde*, &c., but this appears to be against the common pronunciation and the best usage.

Some irregular verbs have really *-de* in the past, viz. *har*, pl. *have*, *havde*, *haft*, have; *vil*, pl. *ville*, *vilde*, *villet*, will, *har*, being contracted for *haver*, forms in the passive *haves*; but *vil*, being a neuter verb, has no passive voice.

döe, dö,	*döde,*	*döet,*	die,
skjér, skje, *)	*skjede,*	*skjet,*	happen.

30. According to the rules for the 3d class are inflected:

kvæler,	*kvalde,*	*kvält,*	suffocate;
tæller,	*talde,*	*talt,*	count;
vælger,	*valgde,*	*valgt,*	choose;
vænner,	*vande,*	*vant,*	accustom;
siger,	*sagde,*	*sagt,*	say;
bringer,	*bragde,*	*bragt,*	bring;
sælger,	*saalgde,*	*saalgt,*	sell;
træder,	*traadte,*	*traadt,*	tread;
smörer,	*smurde,*	*smurt,*	smear;
spörger,	*spurgde,*	*spurgt,*	ask;
fölger,	*fulgde,*	*fulgt,*	attend;
dölger,	*dulgde,*	*dulgt,*	conceal;
flækker,	*flakte,*	*flakt,*	cleave;
rækker,	*rakte,*	*rakt,*	reach;
strækker,	*strakte,*	*strakt,*	stretch;
tækker,	*takte,*	*takt,*	thatch;
vækker,	*vakte,*	*vakt,*	awake;
sætter,	*satte,*	*sat,*	set.

[Molbech and the great majority of Danish authors certainly write

quæler,	*qualte,*	
vænner,	*vante,*	
bringer,	*bragte,*	
sælger,	*solgte,*	*solgt,*
spörger,	*spurgte,*	
fölger,	*fulgte,*	

*) Commonly *skeer*, *skee*. ED.

dölger, dulgte,
tæller, talte;

but Rask, who endeavoured to establish a system of orthography founded on etymology, has Icelandic analogies always in remembrance: the Icelanders say *ven, vandi; sel, seldi; spyr, spurdi; fylgi, fylgdi; tel, taldi* &c. which no doubt led Rask to adopt *d* in preference to *t* in the past tenses of these verbs. ED.]

Some writers, not considering this as a regular class, prefer saying in the past: *kvælede, tællede, vænnede, rækkede, strækkede, tækkede, vækkede;* but as this trailing formation cannot be extended to all cases, nobody saying *vælgede, sigede, spörgede, sættede*, nor to the participles, so as to say *kvælet, tællet*, &c. it appears rather to destroy the real regularity, than to introduce any.

Instead of *talde, talt*, we say also *taalde, taalt*, and this formation ought perhaps to be recommended, being analogous to *sælger, saalgde*, and distinguishing the word more clearly from *taler, talte, talt;* with the verb, *taaler, taalte, taalt*, endure, there is little fear of a confusion, these two words being used in totally different combinations.

There are however some real irregulars of this class, viz.

Sing.	Plur.	Past.	Part.	Infinit.	
gjör,	*gjöre,*	*gjörde,*	*gjört-e,*	*at gjöre,*	make, do;
tör,	*tör,*	*törde,*	*tördet,*	— *torde,*	dare;
tör,	*tör,*	*turde,*	*turdet,*	— *turde,*	need;*)
bör,	*bör,*	*burde,*	*burdet,*	— *burde,*	ought;

*) This distinction between *tör, torde*, to dare, and *tör, turde*, to need, is not generally observed. Molbech in his dictionary has, no doubt, the various senses, but only one form of the verb: *tör, turde, turdet.* Of course, Rask derives his *tör, torde*, from the Icelandic *þori, þordi*; but *tör, turde*, from the German *dürfen.* ED.

Sing.	Plur.	Past.	Part.	Infinit.	
maa,	*maa,*	*maatte,*	*maattet,*	*at maatte,*	must;
kan,	*kunne,*	*kunde,*	*kunnet,*	— *kunne,*	can;
skal,	*skulle,*	*skulde,*	*skullet,*	— *skulle,*	shall;
veed,	*vide,*	*vidste,*	*vidst,*	— *vide,*	know.

The partic. *tordet*, *turdet*, *burdet*, are often, in common conversation, contracted to *tórdt*, *túrdt*, *búrdt*.

31. *The second conjugation.*

As paradigms may serve *giver*, give; *faar*,*) get; *drager*, draw, pull; which are thus inflected.

The activ voice.

Indicative mode.

Pres.	Sing.	*giver,*	*faar,*	*drager,*
	Plur.	*give,*	*faa,*	*drage,*
Past.	Sing.	*gav,*	*fik,*	*drog,*
	Plur.	*gave,*	*fik,* (*finge*),	*droge,*

Optative mode.

Pres.	*give.*	*faa,*	*drage,*

Imperative mode.

Pres. Sing. 2.	*giv,* (*du*),	*faa,*	*drag,*
Plur. 2.	*giver* (*I*),	*faar,*	*drager,*

Derived forms.

Infin.	(*at*) *give,*	(*at*) *faa,*	(*at*) *drage,*
Part.	*givende,*	(*faaende*)	*dragende,*

The passive voice.

Indicative mode.

Pres.	*gives,*	*faas*	*drages,*
Past.	*gaves,*	(*fikkes*),	*droges,*

Optative or Imperative mode.

Pres.	*gives,*	*faas,*	*drages,*

*) This verb has with Molbech and other authors a mute e both in the active and the passive voice, viz. *faaer, faaes* &c.

ED.

Derived forms.

Infin.	*(at) gives,*	*(at) faas,*	*(at) drages.*
Part. Sing.	*givet, -en,*	*faaet,*	*draget, -en,*
Plur.	*givne;*	*faaede;*	*dragne.*

The participle passive creates some difficulty, being sometimes formed in *et* in the neut., *en* in the com., *-ne*, in the plur.; sometimes merely used as a supine *(Biform)* in the neuter sing. in *et*, sometimes the plur. is formed as in 1st conjug., in *-ede*, or *-te*.

32. To the first class belong the verbs enumerated in the following list, where also the plur. of the past, whenever it differs from the sing., shall be marked, as also the com. gend. and plur. of the partic. pass., whenever these forms occur.

kvæder,	*kvad-e,*	*kvædet,*	sing;
beder,	*bad-e,*	*bedet, bedt-e,*	beg;
gider,	*gad-e,*	*gidet, (gidt),*	like;
sidder,	*sad-e,*	*siddet,*	sit;
stinker,	*stank,*	*stinket,*	stink;
klinger,	*klang,*	*klinget,*	sound;
hænger,	*hang,*	*hængt-e,*	hang;
gjælder,	*gjaldt,*	*gjældt,*	is valid;
skjælver,	*skjalv,*	*skjælvet,*	tremble;
falder,	*faldt,*	*faldet, -en, -ne,*	fall;
tier,	*tav,*	*tiet,*	am silent;
smækker,	*smak,*	*smækket, -de,*	clap;
ligger,	*laa,*	*ligget, -de,*	lie;
æder,	*aad,*	*ædt-e,*	eat (of beasts);
sér,	*saae,*	*sét-e,*	see;
stjæler,	*stjal (e),*	*stjaalet, -en, -ne,*	steal;
skærer,	*skar-e,*	*skaaret, -en, -ne,*	cut;
bærer,	*bar-e,*	*baaret, -en, -ne,*	bear.

For *klang* some authors write *klingede;* for *gjaldt, gjældte;* for *skjalv, skjælvede;* for *tav, taug* or *tiede,* partic. *taugt.**) In *saae* the *e* final is mute both in the

*) The great majority of authors certainly write *taug* in the past, *tiet* in part. pass. *Taug* is undoubtedly right, for the past as it is

sing. and plur., and merely used in order to distinguish this tense from the conjunction *saa*, so, then.

The auxiliary *jeg er*, I am, is entirely irregular, and thus inflected:

		Indicative	Optative	Infin.
Pres.	Sing.	*er*,	*være!*	(*at*) *være*,
	Plur.	*ere*,		
			Imperat.	Partic.
Past.	Sing.	*var*,	*vær*,	*værende*,
	Plur.	*vare*,	*værer*,	*været*,

33. The second class contains merely three verbs besides the paradigm. viz.

gaar,*)	*gik*, (*ginge*),	*gaaet*,	go;
hedder,	*hed*,	*hedt*,	am called, [I am hight, or I hight];
græder,	*græd*,	*grædt*,	weep,

Gaar, *hedder* and *græder* have no passive at all, but the compound verb *begræder*, deplore, is regular, in the pass. *begrædes* &c. Of *gaaer* there is also a regular pass. compound, defective in the active voice, viz *omgaaes*, converse, am familiar with, *omgikkes*, sup. *omgaaedes*. The past is sometimes erroneously made *omgikkes*.

Some writers instead of *gaaet*, have begun to use *gaaen*, in the com. gend. and *gaane*, in the pl., but this innovation is entirely foreign to the cultivated language, and only sometimes used by the lowest classes of Copenhagen, with whom it has crept in from the Lowgerm. or Dutch *gegaan*. It must be observed however, that, in the Dutch *gegaan*, the *n* is no mark of the com. gend., but the formative letter of the whole partic. in all genders and numbers like the Engl. *gone*.

Þagdi in Icel., *schwieg* in Germ., *zwieg* in Dutch, *csigatni* to be silent in Magyar. The *g* is not a servile letter that may be cast off at pleasure but a radical letter, as clearly appears from *þegja schweigen*, σιγάω, *taceo* (tacui) &c. ED.

*) The common spelling is *gaaer*, *omgaaes* &c. ED.

34. To the third class belong:

graver;	*grov-e, (gravede),*	*gravet, -de,*	dig;
væver,	*vov-e, (vævede),*	*vævet, -de,*	weave;
lader,	*lod-e,*	*ladet, ladt-e,*	let, cause;
galer,	*gol, (galede),*	*galet,*	crow;
farer,	*foer, fore,*	*faret, -en -ne,*	go;
erfarer,	*erfoer-e (erfarede),*	*erfaret, -en, -ne,*	experience;
jager,	*jog-e,*	*jaget, -de,*	drive, chase;
tager,	*tog-e,*	*taget, -en -ne,*	take;
ler,	*lo,*	*leet,*	laugh;
slaar,	*slog-e,*	*slaaet, -de,*	beat;
staar,)*	*stod-e,*	*staaet,*	stand;
sværger,	*svor-e,*	*svoret -en, -ne,*	swear;
sover,	*sov,*	*sovet,*	sleep;
kommer,	*kom*	*kommet, -en -ne,*	come;
holder,	*holdt,*	*holdt-e,*	keep;
hugger,	*hug,*	*hugget, -de,*	hew, cut;

But *begraver*, bury, *begrov*, makes the part. pass. *begravet*, *begraven*, *begravne*; from *slaar* there is an old partic. *slaget*, *slagen*, *slagne*; *forstaar*, understand, has in the part. pass. *forstaaet*, pl. *forstaaede*. The forms *slaaen*, *forstaaen* are false, and derived from the Dutch *geslaan*, *gestaan*, contrary to the genius of the Danish. From *holder*, there is an old partic. *holdet*, *holdén*, *holdne*, used as an adj., and from *hugget*, is also sometimes formed *huggen*, pl. *hugne*.

35. *The third conjugation.*

As paradigms may serve: *finder*, find; *driver*, drive; *stryger*, rub, stroke.

The active voice.

Indicative mode.

Pres.	Sing.	*finder,*	*driver,*	*stryger,*
	Plur.	*finde,*	*drive,*	*stryge,*
Past.	Sing.	*fandt,*	*drev,*	*strög,*
	Plur.	*fandt, (funde),*	*dreve,*	*ströge,*

*) Commonly *staaer*; also *forstaaer vid inf.* ED.

Optative mode.

Pres.	*finde,*	*drive,*	*stryge,*

Imperative mode.

Pres. Sing. 2.	*find,*	*driv,*	*stryg,*
Plur. 2.	*finder,*	*driver,*	*stryger,*

Derived forms.

Infin.	(*at*) *finde,*	(*at*) *drive,*	(*at*) *stryge,*
Part.	*findende,*	*drivende,*	*strygende.*

The passive voice.

Indicative mode.

Pres.	*findes,*	*drives,*	*stryges,*
Past.	*fandtes,*	*dreves,*	*ströges,*

Imperative or Optative mode.

Pres.	*findes,*	*drives,*	*stryges.*

Derived forms.

Infin.	(*at*) *findes,*	(*at*) *drives,*	(*at*) *stryges,*
Part. Sing.	*fundet, -en,*	*drevet, -en,*	*ströget, -en,*
Plur.	*fundne;*	*drévne;*	*strögne;*

As this conjugation also has many irregularities or varieties, it will be convenient to the learner to enumerate the most remarkable of the verbs of each class.

36. To the first class belong:

drikker,	*drak,* (*drukke*),	*drukket, -en, -ne,*	drink;
stikker,	*stak,* (*stunge*),	*stukket, -en -ne,*	sting;
springer,	*sprang,* (*sprunge*),	*sprunget, -en, -ne,*	leap;
tvinger,	*tvang,* (*tvunge*),	*tvunget, -en, -ne,*	compel;
synger,	*sang,* (*sunge*),	*sunget, -en, -ne,*	sing;
synker,	*sank,* (*sunke*),	*sunket, -en, -ne,*	sink;
binder,	*bandt,* (*bunde*),	*bundet, -en, -ne,*	bind;
svinder,	*svandt,* (*svunde*),	*svundet, -en, -ne,*	pine;*)
spinder,	*spandt,* (*spunde*),	*spundet, -en, -ne,*	spin;
slipper,	*slap* (*sluppe*),	*sluppet, -en, -ne,*	escape;
vinder,	*vandt,* (*vunde*),	*vundet, -en, -ne,*	win;

*) Am reduced, vanish. ED.

rinder,	*randt*, (*runde*),	*rundet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	flow;
brister,	*brast*, (*brüste*),	*brustet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	burst;
fornemmer,	*fornam*, (*-numme*),	*fornummet*, *-en*,	perceive;
hjælper,	*hjalp*, (*hjulpe*),	*hjulpet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	help;
træffer,	*traf*, (*truffe*),	*truffet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	hit;
trækker,	*trak*, (*trukke*),	*trukket*, *-en*, *-ne*,	pull;
sprækker,	*sprak*, (*sprukke*),	*sprukket*, *-en*, *-ne*,	burst;
brækker,	*brak*,	*brukket*, *-en*, *-ne*,	break.

For *brak*, *brukket* we usually say *brækkede*, *brækket*, according to the 1st conj. 1st class. Perhaps *brak* should be used as a neuter verb, *brækkede* as an active one.

The difference between this class and the first of the 2d conj. is properly that this, in the past, has a short or sharp *a*, which, in the plur., is changed again to *u*, and this *u* is preserved in the partic. pass., whereas the 1st cl. of the 2d conj. has a long *a*, which is preserved in the plur. but in the partic. pass. is replaced by the original vowel of the verb in the present tense. This new change of vowel however being sometimes neglected in the plur. of the past, and in the part. pass., several verbs are transferred from this class to the other, in which consequently several words are found with a short vowel. Of this and the like changes, which the modern Danish has undergone, in the 13-15. centuries, the curious reader may find ample information in Mr. N. M. Petersen's *det danske, norske og svenske Sprogs Historie under deres Udvikling af Stamsproget.* 1ste *Del, det danske Sprog.* Kh. 1829. 8.

37. To the second class belong:

sliber,	*sleb-e*,	*slebet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	grind;
griber,	*greb-e*,	*grebet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	seize;
kniber,	*kneb-e*,	*knebet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	pinch;
piber,	*peb-e*,	*pebet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	pipe, whistle;
bliver,	*blev-e*,	*blevet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	become;
river,	*rev-e*,	*revet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	tear;
skriver,	*skrev-e*,	*skrevet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	write;
skriger,	*skreg-e*,	*skreget*, *-en*, *-ne*,	cry;
stiger,	*steg-e*,	*steget*, *-en*, *-ne*,	ascend;
sniger,	*sneg-e*,	*sneget*, *-en*, *-ne*,	sneak;
sviger,	*sveg-e*,	*sveget*, *-en*, *-ne*,	betray;
glider,	*gled-e*,	*gledet*, *-en*, *-ne*, (*glidt*)	slide, glide;
viger,	*veg-e*,	*veget*, *-en*, *-ne*,	yield, cede;
gnider,	*gned-e*,	*gnedet*, *-en*, *-ne*,	rub;

svider,	*sved-e,*	*svedet, -en, -ne,*	singe;
rider,	*red-e,*	*(ridt) redet, -en, -ne,*	ride;
strider,	*stred-e,*	*(stridt), stredet,*	fight, contend;
skrider,	*skred-e,*	*(skridt)skredet,-en,-ne,*	proceed;
vrider,	*vred-e,*	*vredet, -en, -ne,*	wring;
bider,	*bed-e,*	*bidt-e,*	bite;
lider,	*led-e,*	*lidt-e,*	suffer;
slider,	*sled-e,*	*slidt-e,*	tear;
smider,	*smed-e,*	*smidt-e,*	throw,cast,fling;
triner,	*treen,*	*trint-e,*	step;
hviner,	*hveen*),*	*hvint,*	whine, howl.

38. The third class comprizes the following:

kryber,	*kröb-e,*	*kröbet, -en, -ne,*	creep;
löber,	*löb (-e),*	*löbet, -en, -ne,*	run;
ryger,	*rög (-e),*	*röget, -ede,*	smoke;
lyver,	*löj,*	*löjet,*	lie *(mentior)*;
flyver,	*flöj,*	*flöjet, -en, -ne,*	fly;
byder,	*böd-e,*	*budet,-en,-ne,budt,*	invite, bid;
bryder,	*bröd-e,*	*brudt-e,*	break;
fortryder,	*fortröd-e,*	*fortrudt,*	repent;
skyder,	*sköd-e,*	*skudt-e,*	shoot;
skryder,	*skröd-e,*	*skrydt,*	bray;
gyder,	*göd-e,*	*gydt-e,*	pour;
lyder,	*löd-e,*	*lydt-e,*	obey;
flyder,	*flöd (-e),*	*flydt-e,*	flow;
nyder,	*nöd-e,*	*nydt-e,*	enjoy;
snyder,	*snöd-e,*	*snydt-e,*	cheat;
fryser,	*frös (-e),*	*frusset, -en, -ne,*	freeze;
fnyser,	*fnös (-e),*	*fnyst,*	fret;
gyser,	*gös,*	*gyst,*	shudder;
kyser,	*kös,*	*kýst,*	frighten;
nyser,	*nös,*	*nyst,*	sneeze.

The four last are also in the past formed according to the 1st conjugation 2d class, for we say: *fnýste, gýste,*

---

*) The two last words furnish a strong proof of the faultiness of the rules for doubling the vowels in Danish, making the perfectly regular words appear irregular. There are also some such verbs in the 2d conj. e. g. *foer* (fór), *saae* (sǎ').

kýste, nýste. There are also several variations of the partic. pass. as *brudet, -en, -ne,* instead of *brudt;* even in vulgar speech *fludt* for *flydt*, *snudt* for *snydt*, *frosset* for *frusset*, *kosset-en* for *kýst.*

39. *Auxiliary verbs.*

The verbs possessing but few inflections, in proportion to the many distinctions of tense and mode, which it is often necessary to indicate in speaking of actions with precision, auxiliary verbs (*Hjælpeord*) are applied nearly as in English, to form a number of additional tenses and modes by way of periphrasis.

The most remarkable auxiliary verbs in Danish are: *skal, vil, har, er, faar,**) *bliver;* having spoken of their inflection already under their respective classes, we have merely here to observe, to what part of the principal verb they are joined, and what modifications in its sense they are intended to express.

Skal and *vil* in the pres. tense denote futurity or intention, though not exactly as in English. *Skal* implies a duty and necessity on the part of the person; *vil* a mere futurity, without any personal volition a sort of prediction of what will happen, e. g. *jeg skal skrive*, I shall write, *jeg vil drukne*, I shall drown, (if...). In the past (*skulde, vilde*), they denote a futurity relative to some other time; they are prefixed to the infinitive, as: *jeg skal komme i Morgen tidlig*, I shall come (call) to morrow morning. *Han sagde jeg skulde komme*, he said (that) I should come ɔ: told me to come, where I may add *i Gaar*, yesterday, the action "to come" being future merely with respect to "his orders," not with respect to my relation to time. The past of these auxiliaries also expresses the conditional future in French; e. g. *jeg skulde*

*) Commonly *faaer.* ED.

nok skrive, *hvis jeg havde noget at skrive om*, I would write (to him) indeed, if I had any thing to write about.

Har and *er* serve in the present to express the preterperfect, and in the past (*havde*, *var*), the pluperfect, when connected with the participle passive of the principal verb, as: *jeg har hört*, I have heard; *jeg havde læst*, I had read; *du* (*De*) *er kòmmen for silde*, you are come too late; *han var ikke kommen*, he was not come (arrived). The difference is, that *har* is used with active verbs, *er* with some of the neuters,*) and with all the passives, e. g, *er fundet*, has been found; *var fundet*, had been found; it never, as in English, expresses the pres. of the indicative pass., so that *is found* must be rendered in Danish by *findes*, *was found* by *fandtes*.

Faar, get, united to the partic. pass. expresses the Engl. *shall have*, as: *naar jeg faaer skrevet*, when I shall have written, *naar han fik Bogen læst*, when he should have read (perused) the book; but *da han fik Bogen læst*, when he had got through the book.

Har and *faar* are sometimes combined with the infin., in order to express a duty or obligation in the person; as: *jeg har at sige Dem*, I have to say (must say) to you; *du faaer at sige mig*, you must say to (tell) me. *Er* is never used in this way, so that the Engl. I am to... must be translated, *jeg har at*, or *jeg skal*, *jeg maa*.

Bliver, am, is often used in a periphrasis of the passive, as: *bliver fundet*, is found, *blev fundet*, was found.

40. Two auxiliaries are often connected with one principal verb, as:

har (*skullet*), *villet sige*, has had (intended) to say;
havde (*skullet*) *villet sige*, had had (intended) to say;

---

*) But these are always to be considered as neutro passive verbs. ED.

skal, vil have sagt, shall, will have said *);
skulde, vilde have sagt, should, would have said;
har haft skrevet, have had (it) written (once);
havde haft skrevet, had had (it) written;
skal, vil være skrevet, shall, will be written;
skulde, vilde være skrevet, should, would be written;
har været skrevet, has been written;
havde været skrevet, had been written;
skal, vil faa skrevet, shall get (it) written;
skulde, vilde faa skrevet, should get (it) written;
har faaet skrevet, has got written;
havde faaet skrevet, had got written;
skal, vil blive skrevet, shall, will be written;
skulde, vilde blive skrevet, should, would be written;
er blevet skrevet, has been written;
var blevet skrevet, had been written;
havde blevet skrevet, would have been written:

Sometimes even three auxiliaries are added to one principal verb, as:

det skal have været besluttet, it is said to have been resolved;
det skulde have været gjort, it should have been done;
det vilde have været gjort, it would have been done;
det skal være blevet omtalt, it is reported that it was spoken of;
det skulde have (være) blevet omtalt, it should have been spoken of;
det vilde være blevet omtalt, it would have been spoken of;
det skal have blevet gjort, it shall have been done;
*det skulde have***) *blevet gjort*, it should have been done.

The reader will observe, that there is a good deal more variety in the Danish than in the English circumlocutions; and that variety serves admirably to modify the sense, in a manner difficult to express in other languages; e. g. *det skulde have været gjort* signifies: it

---

*) The meaning of this phrase *jeg skal have sagt* usually is: *I am said or reported to have said;* but *han vil have sagt*, he shall have said (it, before you may warn him).

**) I allow this *have*, in the two last phrases, to remain because Rask seems to have put it deliberately; but *være* ought undoubtedly to be put instead of "*have*." ED.

should have been previously done, and consequently then finished or completed; but *det skulde have blevet gjort* means: it should have been done after that time, implying moreover that the person would have done it, or caused it to be done. Thus also: *det skal være skrevet* means: it shall be (ready) written, or I shall have it written at a certain future time, but *det skal blive skrevet* expresses an assurance that it shall be written, or that I will write it; and *det skal skrives* expresses a command: it shall, must be written, or you have to write it. So that a master will say: *det skal gjöres i Dag,* it must be done to day: and the servant will answer: *det skal blive gjort,* it shall be done (viz. to-day); or *det skal være gjort inden Klokken sex,* it shall be done (finished) before six o' clock.

There are several other verbs used as auxiliaries, e. g. *maa,* may, must; *kan,* can, may; *tör,* dare, need; *lader,* let, cause to, &c. Besides the English student should observe, that these, as well as the auxiliaries proper, are more complete or less defective in Danish than in English, being used even in the infinitive, in the same capacity.

This great variety being modified still more by the conjunctions, *naar,* when, *da,* as, &c. it is a strange fault in some old Grammars to mistake these circumlocutions for real tenses or modes of the verbal inflection, and to admit them as such in the paradigms of the regular conjugation.

Several of the English modes of applying the auxiliaries are not used in Danish, e. g.

I am writing, jeg er i Færd med at skrive;
I was writing, jeg var ved at skrive;
I am going to write, jeg skal til at skrive;
I was going to write, jeg skulde, vilde til at skrive;
I do not write, jeg skriver ikke;
I did not write, jeg skrev ikke, (har ikke skrevet);
do write, skriv dog (endelig);
do not write, skriv ikke, skriv dog ikke;
I have done writing, jeg er færdig med at skrive;
I had done writing, jeg var færdig med at skrive.

41. *Different kinds of verbs.*

In Danish, as in other languages which have a passive voice there is a peculiar sort of verbs with passive terminations but active signification. They are commonly called verbs deponent (*lideformede Gjerningsord*), and are regularly inflected as other passive verbs of the conj. and class, to which they belong; only the Supine, requiring also the addition of the passive *s*, creates some difficulty. Those of the first conj. 1st class form the sup. in *edes*, or *ets*, those of the 2d class in *tes*. Ex.

fattes, fattedes (*har fattedes*), want;
lykkes, lykkedes, har lykkedes or *lykkets*, succeed, prosper;*)
længes, længtes, har længtes, long;
synes, syntes, har syntes, seem;
slaaes, sloges, har slaaedes or *slaaets*, fight;
bides, bedes, (har bidts), bite one another.

Some are entirely defective in the sup. as: *mindes, mindedes*, recollect.

Neuter verbs *(gjenstandslöse Gjo.)* on the contrary have no passive voice at all, as: *jeg staaer*, I stand; *jeg kommer*, I come; never *jeg staaes, jeg kommes*.

Reflective verbs *(tilbagevirkende Gjo.)* are followed by the objective cases of the pronouns, as:

jeg smigrer mig, I flatter myself,
du röber dig, thou betrayest thyself,
han bader sig, he bathes (himself,)
vi smigre os, we flatter ourselves,
I röbe eder, you betray yourselves,
de bade sig, they bathe (themselves.)

In the 3. p. care must be taken, to distinguish the reflective pronoun *sig* from the personal (*ham, hende*, pl.

*) When *Lykkes* is used as an impersonal verb *er* is used as its auxiliary and not *har*. A Dane certainly says: "*det er sjælden lykkedes mig at faae saa god en Afstöbning*. I have rarely succeeded in getting so good a cast. The Icelanders say: "*þat hefr luckazt.*"

dem), which after such verbs would indicate a fourth person, e. g. *han bader ham*, he bathes him, *de bade dem*, they bathe them, implies somebody beside the agent. From the reflective *sig*, must also be distinguished the reciprocal pronouns *hinanden*, each other, when speaking of two, and *hverandre*, one another, speaking of more persons, e. g.

de elske hinanden, they love each other;
de elske hverandre, they love one another.

Several verbs have a reciprocal sense in the passive voice, and do not, in that case, admit any reciprocal pronoun e. g. *vi sés hver Dag*, we see each other every day. The reflective and reciprocal verbs quoted as examples hitherto may all be used as transitives, e. g. *jeg smigrer ingen*, I do not flatter anybody &c.; but some reflective verbs require in this case another expression in English, e. g. *jeg betænker mig*, I hesitate, but *jeg betænker*, I consider.*)

Several verbs are only used as reflectives, e. g.

jeg understaar mig, I presume;
jeg skynder mig, I hasten;

---

*) This is not very clear, still I do not like to alter it. The meaning certainly is: that there are some reflective verbs in Danish which are not usually rendered by corresponding reflective verbs in English, but rather by some other absolute and intransitive verb, different from that by which the general sense of the Danish verb, when it is used absolutely, is commonly expressed, and of this Rask gives as an instance *jeg betænker mig*, which thus used as a verb reflective, must be translated "I hesitate"; although *jeg betænker*, used absolutely, must be Englished "I consider". But the example is not felicitously chosen, for the corresponding verb reflective, although perhaps rather obsolete certainly exists in this case, and is unquestionably English, since Shylock says in the Merchant of Venice: "I will bethink me": and on the other hand "I consider" or "I will consider" is also sometimes used to express the sense of the Danish *jeg betænker mig*. ED.

several others, require a preposition beside the objective pronoun, to combine them with another object, e. g.

jeg forstaar mig paa, I am skilled in;
jeg bestræber mig for, I endeavour;
jeg forbinder mig til, I engage;
jeg bryder mig ikke om, I do not care about.

There are also, in Danish, as in English, many impersonal verbs *(upersonlige Gjo.)*, thus called because merely used with an indefinite nominative in the 3d pers. sing. of the different tenses, though else formed regularly. Ex. *det regner*, *regnede*, *(har) regnet*, it rains; *det sner*, *) *sneede*, *(har) sneet*, it snows; *det lyner*, it lightens; *det tordner*, it thunders; *det tör*, *töede*, *töet*, it thaws. Many personal verbs can also be used impersonally, as: *jeg fryser*, it is cold to me, I shiver, but *det fryser*, it freezes; even so we say impersonally: *det blæser*, it blows; *det stormer*, it storms; *det gjör ondt*, it smarts: though *jeg blæser*, *jeg stormer*, are also used. — Likewise *man troer*, one believes o: they believe; *man siger*, they say. — Sometimes *der*, there, is prefixed as a sort of indefinite nominative, but then the real nominative is usually added afterwards, as: *der kommer en Tid*, a time will come; *der löber (gaaer) et Rygte*, there is a report; and the verb is even put in the plural, if the nominative be plur. as: *der ere de som mene*, there are (there be) those (people) who think. — Several impersonal verbs are, at the same time, deponent, though else active, when used personally. Ex. *der siges*, it is said, they say; *der skrives*, they write; *det dages*, it dawns; *det mörknes*, it grows dark. **) — Several neutro-

---

*) The common spelling is: *det sneer*, *det töer*, which also is supported by etymology since the Icelandic has *snjóar*, *þýðir* (*þeyir*). ED.

**) These are, indeed, not verbs deponent, but grammatically speaking, verbs passive or middle, just as *dicitur* and *scribitur* in

active verbs have no passive voice, except as impersonals. Ex. *der soves for meget*, they sleep too much; *der løbes ídelig*, they run (up and down) continually.

It must still be remarked, before we leave the verbs, that the active participle in *-ende* is also sometimes used in a passive signification; f. i. *blæsende Instrumenter*, instruments to be blown, i. e. wind-instruments; *mit iboende Hus*, my house lived in, e. g. the house I live in; especially as a future part. pass. e. g. *den afholdende Avksion*, (Auction), the auction to be held; *den udgivende Bog*, the book about to be published; though several Grammarians of later times, not knowing the old Icelandic, nor the Swedish, have rejected these forms as spurious.

42. PARTICLES.

Under this denomination are generally comprehended; adverbs *(Biord)*, prepositions *(Forholdsord)*, conjunctions *(Bindeord)* and interjections *(Udraabsord)*. Of all these parts of speech merely some of the adverbs admit a sort of inflection, viz. a comparative and a superlative degree, which are however usually similar to those of the corresponding adjectives; e. g. *smukt, smukkere, smukkest*, fine, pretty; *höjt, højere, højest*, high; the latter is contracted in the superlative, when prefixed to other adv. or adj. e. g. *højst dannet (Aand)*, highly cultivated (mind). For the positive degree of adverbs vid. p. 67.

Latin, and they do not change that character by being used impersonally. When the slave says to Pseudolus *"Quid agitur?"* and he replies: *"statur"* there is no doubt that these must be considered as verbs passive: on that their comicalness partly depends. *Det "mörkner"* and *det "mörknes"* are two Danish impersonal verbs which convey indeed only one meaning viz. "it grows dark" or "it is getting dark"; still the former is an active and the latter a passive verb. ED.

Several are irregular as:

ilde (slemt),	*værre*,	*værst*,	ill, badly;
vel (godt),	*bedre*,	*bedst*,	well;
tit (tidt),	*tiere*,	*tiest*,	frequently;
længe,	*længer*,	*længst*,	long, (*diu*);
meget,	*mer*, *)	*mest*,	much;
gjerne,	*heller*,	*helst*,	fain;
(for),	*för*,	*först*,	prior.

PART III.

FORMATION.

43. *Introductory remarks.*

All words are either simple *(enkelte)*, as: *et Hóved*, a head, or compound *(sammensatte)*, as *en Hovedpine*, a headach; the simple words are moreover either primitive (*Stamord*) as: *rödt*, red, or derivative *(Afledsord)*, as: *en Rödme*, a blush, *hun rödmer*, she blushes.

The simple primitives are but few in every language, and their augmentation by the introduction of foreign words, which is the common resource of all mixed idioms, is a mere burthen to the memory, not affecting the understanding, and therefore prejudicial to the instruction of the common people; whereas it is the great excellency of original or less mixed tongues, that they have the means of enlarging the fundamental stock of expressions by derivation and composition, in such a manner, that the new word must create the idea in the mind, as soon as the sound reaches the ear. It will also be a considerable assistance to the student's memory in recollecting the immense

*) Commonly *meer*. ED.

number of words, of which a cultivated language consists, if he pay some attention to the manner, in which this whole mass is formed from the few original primitives. In this view we shall here briefly consider the Danish derivation and composition. Those who wish more ample information may consult: *Dansk Orddannelseslære af* N. Petersen. Odense 1826.

DERIVATION.

44. *Subdivision.*

When a general Idea, e. g. of negation, deterioration &c. is to be expressed, some prefixed are added to the words; but whenever a word is to be transferred from one part of speech to another, it is effected by terminations or change of vowel, sometimes even by transferring the words without any change, this last is however of much less frequent occurence in Danish than in English, the grammatical qualities being in general more strongly marked on the words in the former, than in the latter of these languages.

45. *Prefixes.*

Of a negative or privative signification are:

U- Engl. un- [or in-] Ex. *Udyd*, vicious habit; *uvist*, uncertain; *uovervindelig*, invincible; *uudsigelig-t*, unspeakable; *ugjort*, not done [undone]; *ugjerne*, unwillingly; *umager*, or *ulejliger*, trouble (one);

Van- Vanskabning, monster, from *Skabning*, a creature; *vanartig*, depraved; *vansirer*, disfigure;

Mis- Misundelse, envy; *misundelig-t*, envious; *at misunde*, to envy; *miströster*, dishearten. Sometimes composed again with the negative *u*, as: *umiskjendelig*, evident; [not to be mistaken].

For- fordømmer, condemn; *forgiver*, poison; *forskærer*, spoil in cutting (e. g. a gown or coat); *forsmaaer*, slight; *en Forséelse*, an oversight; *Foragt*, contempt, *forlegen-t*, embarrassed, puzzled, at a loss. Sometimes it merely serves to form verbs of an active signification, as *forgylde*, gild; *fordansker*, do into Danish; or nouns of such verbs, as: *Forgylding*, gilding; *Fordanskning*, translation into Danish; *Forandring*, change; *Forstyrrelse*, devastation. This prefix appears to be different from the preposition *for*, which is also frequently used in composition; in general they may be distinguished by observing, that the prepos. has the emphasis of the word, the prefix not as: *Fòrklæder*, aprons; *forklæder*, disguise; there are however some exceptions to this rule, as; *et Fortrin*, a preference, preeminence; but *fortrínlig-t*, preeminent.

Und- Undskyldning, excuse; *undskýldelig*, excusable; *at ùndskylde*, to excuse. Also composed with the negative *u-*, as; *uundskyldelig*, inexcusable;

Veder- Vederlag, compensation; *vederfares*, happen to; *vederstyggelig*, abominable.

46. Of a positive signification are:

Be- Begreb, notion, conception; *betænkelig-t*, doubtful; *betænksom*, considerate, *bekläger*, bewail: from *klager*, complain, *betænker*, consider, [some of these also receive the negative u as *ubetænksom* inconsiderate *ubeviist*, unproved.]

Bi- Bistand, assistance; *Bíhensigt*, secondary design; *bíløbig*, [Germ. *beiläufig*] by the way, obiter; *bídrager*, contribute.

Sam- Samtykke, consent; *Sàmklang*, harmony; *sàmtidig*, contemporary, coeval; *at sàmtykke*, to consent; *usamdrægtig*, disagreeing, discordant.

Er- Erhòlder, get, receive; *erkjènder*, acknowledge; *Erindring*, remembrance; *uerstatteligt*, irretrievable;

An-) Ansigt,* face; *et Angreb,* an attack; *at angribe,* to attack; *uanvendelig-t,* inapplicable.

47. Pronominal & adverbial prefixes are:

h- (demonstrative with respect to the 1st pers.), as; *her,* here; *hid,* hither; the Lat. *hoc,* this, seems to be formed in this manner.

d- (demonstrative with respect to the 3d pers.), as; *det, den,* that; *der,* there; *did,* thither; *da,* then;

hv- (relative and interrogative) *hvad, hvem, hvilket, hvor,* where;

i- (placed before the *hv,* gives those words an indeterminate or general signification), as: *ihvad,* whatsoever; *ihvem,* whosoever; *ihvilket,* whichsoever; *ihvor,* wheresoever.

AFFIXES.

48. Formation of nouns, *a)* Affixes denoting the *agent;*

-er: *Dommer,* judge; *Læser,* reader; *Englænder,* Englishman; *Viser,* a hand of a watch; *Stegvender,* turnspit.

-ner: *Kunstner,* artist; *Falskner,* forger.

-mager: *Skomager,* shoemaker; *Urmager,* watchmaker; *Mager,* is never used separately in Danish, but merely adopted from the Germ. *macher,* in compound words.

-ling: Lærling, disciple; *Yndling,* favorite; *Yngling,* a youth; *Gæsling,* gosling.

-inde: *Hertuginde,* dutchess; *Grevinde,* countess; *Sangerinde,* songstress; *Veninde,* (female) friend; *Ulvinde,* a shewolf.

---

*) Though *Bi-* and *An-* are no Danish words, yet they occur separately in several phrases adopted from the Teutonic tongues, as: *lægge bi,* lay by; *staa bi,* stand by; *det gaar an,* that will do, Germ. Es geht an; *at gribe sig an,* to exert one's self.

ske: *Væverske*, female weaver; *Forförerske*, seductress; *Giftblanderske*, (fem.) poisoner.

49. *b)* the *action*, as;

Monosyllabic nouns, formed of verbs, are mentioned p. 13, but there are many more of this sort Ex. *et Skrig*, a cry; *et Synk*, a draught; *et Sting*, a stitch; *et Stik*, a stab; *et Suk*, a sigh.

-en; en Prædiken, Prækken, a sermon; *vor Gjøren og Laden*, our doing and omission i. e. our whole conduct.

-ende: (mit) Vidende, (my) knowledge; *Sigende*, saying; *Foretagende*, undertaking.

-ing: Handling, action; *Forandring*, change, alteration; *Landing*, landing; *Munding*, mouth (of a river); *Tinding*, temple (of the head); even of persons, as; *Arving*, heir; *Hövding*, chieftain, from *Hoved;*

-ning: Skrivning, writing; *Læsning*, reading; *en Gjerning*, an act (action); *en Strækning*, a tract of land; *en Grönning*, a green, a lawn; *en Slægtning*, a relation; *en Flygtning*, a fugitive; *en Dronning*, a queen, from *Drot*, a lord. [In Icelandic *Drotning*].

else: Styrelse, moderation; *Beskrivelse*, description; *Udförelse*, execution; *Frembringelse*, production; *Fornöjelse*, pleasure; *Skrivelse*, letter; *Stiftelse*, establishment; *Hændelse*, accident; — *et Værelse*, a room.

-sel: Födsel, birth; *Kjörsel*, driving; *Udförsel*, exportation; *Trusel*, threat; *Hængsel*, hinge; *Fængsel*, prison.

-t, d: en Drift, an instinct (from *driver*); *Dragt*, dress; *Indtægt*, revenue; *Blæst*, blowing, wind; *en Sæd*, a seed, (from *at saa*); *en Færd*, a journey, tour, (*fare*); *en Skyld*, debt, crime, (*skulle*); *Byrd*, extraction, descent, (*bære*); — *et Vidnesbyrd*, a testimony.

st: *Kunst*, art (from *kunne*); *Fangst*, a catch, a take, *Yndest*, *Gunst*, favor; *Ankomst*, arrival; *Tjeneste*, service, but *tjenst-agtig*, officious.

-erí: *Fiskerí*, fishery; *Praleri*, ostentation; *Tyverí*, theft.

50. *c) Qualities,* &c. denote:

-e: en Héde, a heat; *Kùlde,* cold; *Vréde,* anger; *Glæde,* joy; *Fylde,* fulness; *Styrke,* strenght; *Længe,* row (of houses); *Mitte (Midte),* middle.

-de: *Dybde,* depth; *Længde,* lenght; *Vidde,* width; *Mængde,* multitude; *Tyngde,* gravity.

-hed: *Höjhed,* highness, greatness; *Skævhed,* wryness; *Fríhed,* freedom; *Kærlighed,* love; *Rettighed,* right, privilege.

-dom: Viisdom, wisdom; *Ungdom,* youth; *Alderdom,* old age; *Lægedom,* medicine;

-dömme (a province or district): *Hertugdömme,* dutchy; *Fyrstendömme,* principality; *Herredömme,* dominion.

-skab: et Grevskab, a count's estate, also a county; *Fjendskab,* enmity; *Venskab,* friendskip; *Broderskab,* fraternity, brotherhood; *Svógerskab,* affinity; — and of the com. gend. *Klògskab-en,* prudence; *Mórskab-en,* diversion; *Kùndskab,* knowledge; *Videnskab,* science; &c. cf. p. 13 & 14.

-me: Fedme, fatness; *Södme,* sweetness; *Rödme,* blush; *Kvalme,* qualm.

51. *d) concrete things.*

-e, (the definite neuter of the adj.), *et Onde,* an evil; *et Hele,* a whole; *et Mörke,* the dark; *et Rige,* dominion, kingdom, (reign, power), from the adj. *rig,* rich, formerly powerful.

-t, (the indef. neut. of the adj.): *Rödt,* red colour; *Grönt, (Grönsel),* vegetables; *Blyhvidt, (Bleghvidt),* white-lead; *Spansgrönt,* verdegris; *Berlinerblaat,* the Prussian Blue. (It is a germanism to say *Spansgrön, Berlinerblaa*).

- (the indef. com gend. of the adj.); *en Ret,* a court, a noun of very ancient formation; especially of persons, as: *en Sórt,* a negro; *en Vild,* a savage; *en Gal,* a

madman; *en Lovkyndig*, a lawyer; *en Lærd*, a scholar, a learned man, and more frequently in the def. plur. *de Sorte*, *de Vilde*, &c.

-el, *l*, (denotes an implement); *en Nögel*, a key; *en Sadel*, a saddle; *en Skovl*, a shovel.

There are many remnants of old forms of derivation, which existing only in some few words may be considered as irregular, as: *en Maan-ed*, a month; *et Lev-net*, life, conduct; *en Hav-n*, a haven; *et Sog-n*, a parish (from *söge*, seek); *en Tör-ke*, drought; *en Væd-ske*, a liquor; *et Löf-te*, a promise.

52. Formation of adjectives.

-ig-t: módig-t, courageous; *sövnig-t*, sleepy; *flittig-t*, industrious; *lydig-t*, obedient.

-agtig-t: bondeagtig-t, rustic; *kvindeagtig-t*, effeminate; *skarnagtig-t*, vile, mean, malicious; *nöjagtig-t*, accurate; *blaaagtig-t*, bluish; *langagtig-t*, longish.

-lig-t: venlig-t, friendly; *daglig-t*, daily; *lykkelig-t*, happy; *beviislig-t*, demonstrable; *mulig-t*, possible; *umulig-t*, impossible; *syrlig-t*, sourish. Sometimes *t* is inserted between this termination and the root, e. g. *mùndtlig-t*, oral; *öffentlig-t*, public; *égentlig-t*, proper; (from *Mund*, mouth; Germ. *offen*, Dan. *aaben*, open; *égen*; own). Still more frequently an *e* precedes, especially in those formed from verbs, and denoting a passive possibility. Ex. *kostelig-t*, costly; *dödelig-t*, mortal; *tænkelig-t*, apt to be thougt, i. e. imaginable, conceivable; *ubegribelig-t*, incomprehensible.

-som-t: vòldsom-t, violent; *nöjsom-t*, content; *eensom-t*, lonely; *langsom-t*, slow; *arbeidsom-t*, assiduous.

-sommelig-t: fredsòmmelig-t, peaceable; *möjsommelig-t*, laborious; *frugtsommelig-t*, pregnant; *kjedsommelig-t*, tedious.

bar-t: frùgtbar-t, fertile; *ærbar-t*, modest, composed; *seilbar-t*, navigable; *ufeilbar-t*, infallible.

-barlig-t: skinbärlig-t, manifest; *ufejlbärligt*, that cannot fail.

-sk: spodsk, scornful, disdainful; *løbsk*, restive, starting (horse); *træsk*, cunning; *lumsk*, insidious. Many national or patronymic adj. get this termination, as: *tysk*, (tydsk), German; *pólsk*, Polish; *ungersk*, Hungarian; *græsk*, Greek, Grecian; *fransk*, French. Sometimes *i* precedes, as: *barbárisk*, barbarous; *politisk*, political; *filosófisk*, philosophical; *tyrkisk*, Turkish; *russisk*, Russian; *hebraisk*, Hebrew; *kaldaisk*, Chaldean.

When such epitheta gentilia are used as nouns, and consequently written with capitals, they denote the languages, as: *taler De Dansk?* do you speak Danish? *Har de studeret Kinesisk?* have you studied Chinese? *Han kan slet intet Portugisisk*, he knows nothing of Portuguese. These nouns are usually of the com. gend. as: *brêd Dansk*, broad Danish; *Tysken er vanskelig*, the German is difficult.

-et: hórnet, horned; *búget*, bellied; *fúret*, furrowed; *trekantet*, triangular; *firkantet*, *aattekantet [ottekantet]* &c.; *stribet*, striped; *smalstribet*, narrowstriped; *blaaaaret*, blueveined; *blaaöjet*, blueeyed; *hullet*, full of holes; *behjærtet*, courageous; *haaret*, hairy.

-laden-t: mörkladen-t, *sortladen-t*, of a dark complexion, darkfaced; *rundladen-t*, round-faced; *vred-laden-t*, hot-headed.

-vorren-t, *(vorn-t)*: *fjantevorren-t*, *tossevorren-t*, lsily; *kvaklevorren-t*, fickle.*)

-s: gængs (gængse), current; *taus*, silent; *eens* uniform, alike; *fælles*, sommon (not *fælleds*, being derived from *Fælle*, not from *Fælled*).

There are remnants of many more adjectival terminations, as: *vammel*, qvalmish; *gylden*, golden; *sölvern*,

---

*) *Kvaklevorren*: the ordinary spelling would be *qvaklevorren*. I do not recollect ever having seen this word; possibly it is a misprint for *vaklevorren*, fickle: but even this word is little used. ED.

silvern; *fædrene*, paternal; but these occur only in a few instances.

53. Formation of adverbs and prepositions.

-e (Icel. *-i*), indicates rest in a place, as: *ude*, without; *oppe*, up; *hjemme*, at home; *borte*, away; (from *ud*, out; *op*, up; *hjem*, home; *bort*, away).

-e (Icel. *a*, forms some old adv. from adj.) *vide*, widely; *dyre*, dearly; *stille*, calmly; *næppe*, scarcely (from *knap*, scanty).

-er (motion to, or rest in a place): *öster (ud)*, east, *vester (paa)*, west; *atter*, again (back); *agter*, aft, abaft; *efter*, *under*, &c.

-en (Icel. *an*, originally motion from a place, now its signification is not easily defined): *östen for*, to the east of; *vesten fra*, from the west; *uden til*, on the outside; *inden (en Time)*, within (an hour); *oven paa*, on the top of; *næsten*, almost; *sjælden*, rarely.

-igen, *ligen* (from adj. in *ig*, *lig*): *kraftigen*, strongly; *modigen*, courageously; *föleligen*, sensibly. But the adjectives are frequently used as adverbs, without the *-en*, as: *han blev ikke understøttet kraftigt nok*, he was not supported sufficiently (or strongly) enough; *han blev föleligt stråffet*, he was severely punished. Several modern authors would add the neuter *t* in these cases, but this is a Swedish form, contrary to the Danish usage; we constantly say: *de slog dygtig fra sig*, they defended themselves bravely; *hjærtelig gjerne*, with all my heart. The justness of this rule appears evident from the next adverbial termination.

-lig, *elig* (Engl. *ly*, *ely*), as: *nemlig*, *navnlig*, to wit, namely; *lydelig*, audibly; *snarlig*, soon; *visselig*, certainly; *fuldelig*, fully, (never *nemligt*, *fuldeligt*).

-t (The neuter form of the adj. of other terminations is often applied adverbially) as: *godt*, well; *vidt og bredt*, widely; *höjt og dýrt*, with terrible oaths; but there

are many exceptions, as: *knap nok*, hardly enough; *heel vel*, very well; *fuldkommen fornöjet*, perfectly satisfied. — Those that have no *t* added in the neuter, never receive it in the adverbial form, as: *skjelmsk*, roguish, & roguishly.

-s -es: (originally the genitive *-s*): *allesteds*, everywhere; *et Steds*, somewhere; *alskens*, of all sorts; *skraas over for*, on the other side, askaunce, nearly opposite; *paa tværs*, across; *langs med*, along; *udvortes*, externally; *indvortes*, internally; the two last are also used as adjectives.

54. Formation of verbs.

-er, is sometimes merely added to nouns or adjectives, in order to make verbs of them, as: *Agt*, intention, *agter*, intend; *synd-er*, sin; *hed-er*, heat; *aabenbar-er*, reveal; *stiv-er*, starch. — Sometimes the radical vowel is changed, as: *virker*, act, work, from *Verk*; *ýder*, pay (taxes) from *úd*, out; *glæder*, gladden, from *glad*; *böder*, pay (as a fine or damage) from *Bód*, *hændes*, happens, comes to hand, from *Haand*.

Neuter verbs of the complex order are made transitive, and transferred to the simple order, by changing the vowel, and sometimes hardening the characteristic consonant of the past, thus:

springer,	*sprang*,	— *sprænger*,	burst a thing;
synker,	*sank*,	— *sænker*,	sink something;
sidder,	*sad*,	— *sætter*,	set, put;
ligger,	*laa*,	— *lægger*,	lay;
farer,	*fór*,	— *förer*,	carry;
ryger,	*rög*,	— *röger*,	smoke;
bider,	*bèd*,	— *bèder*,	bait, stop;

viz. let the hounds or the horses bate. Some few are formed from the present tense, as: *vaager*, watch, *vækker*, awaken; *knager* - *knækker*, crack; *nejer*, courtesey, bow; *nikker*, nod.

-ter: gifter, marry away, from *giver*; *svigter*, fail, from *sviger; vænter*, expect (from Icel. *vân*, hope;*) *sigter*, aim at, from *see; sigter*, sift, from *si; nægter*, deny, from *nej*, no.

-ner: ligner, am like; *blegner*, turn pale; *stivner*, grow stiff; *vidner*, bear witness.

-ker, -ger: dyrker, worship (hold dear); *ynker*, pity, from *öm*, tender; *forsinker*, delay, from *seen; vrikker*, jog, from *vrider*; *skulker*, sculk, from *skjuler; spörger*, ask, from *Spór*; *hærger*, ravage, from *Hær*. Sometimes *i* is inserted before *ger*, as: *beskjæftiger*, keep busy, occupy; *fortrediger*, provoke; *afskjediger*, [with Molbech *afskediger*] discharge; *bemægtiger mig*, seize upon.

-ser: standser, stop; *renser*, cleanse; *hidser*, heat (the blood); *hilser*, salute.

-sker: hersker, sway; *husker*, remember; *formindsker*, lessen; *smasker*, smack with the lips.

-rer: bævrer, tremble; *kvidrer*, chirp; *ytrer*, [commonly *yttrer*,] utter; *smulrer*, crumble; *valtrer*, waddle; *kantrer*, overturn, or upset (the boat).

-ler: smugler, smuggle; *bejler*, court, woo, (from *beder*); *besudler*, soil; *funkler*, sparkle.

These derivatives in *-ter, ner, ker, ger, ser, sker, rer, ler*, belong to the 1st conj. 1st class, and are all regularly inflected. But though all the examples quoted are in frequent use, and the derivation in most of them clear and indisputable, yet the language rarely admits of new formations through these means; but rather through the prefixes: *for, be* &c.

-érer, forms verbs from roots of the southern languages, as: *regulerer*, regulate; *reformerer*, reform; *dikterer*, dictate; *konstituerer*, constitute; *pulveriserer*, pulverize; and many more. They should properly belong

*) But the erroneous spelling *venter* is most frequently used. ED.

to the 1st conj. ist class, but are often contracted and referred to the 2d class, e. g. *Lùther reformerte meget*, L. reformed much (many things). *Han er reformért*, he belongs to the reformed church.

55. COMPOSITION.

The composition of words is very free, and the chief source of the copiousness of the modern Danish; yet it is by no means illimited or irregular, and ought not therefore to be passed by without notice in any good grammar of this tongue.

In general, the last part of the compound expresses the chief idea, which is described or defined by the preceding part, e. g. *en Bog*, a book, *en Skolebog*, a school-book, *en Lærebog*, a compendium; *Læsebog*, selections, extracts; *en Ordbog*, a dictionary; *en Flaske*, a bottle, *en Blækflaske*, an ink-bottle, *en Ølflaske*, a bottle for beer, or in which is, or has been beer; but *en Flaske Blæk*, means a bottle of ink; *en Flaske Øl*, a bottle of beer, *en Punsebolle*, is a bowl for punch, but *en Bolle Puns*, a bowl of punch; *en Sölvskje*, a silver spoon; *en Mùrskje*,*) a trowel; *Træsko*, wooden shoes. Thus even adjectives, e. g. *frivillig*, voluntary; *làngvarig*, of long duration; *hùsvant*, familiar; *làndsforvíst*, exiled, banished; likewise some verbs, as: *føder*, nourish, support, *brödföder*, afford, yield sufficient provision of corn for bread (to a family); *hugger*, cut; *hàlshugger*, behead; *iàgttager*, observe; *istàndsætter*, repair; *löslader*, set free; *frítager*, exempt.

Sometimes the last part is a derivative, formed from a separate word, but not used separately itself. Ex. *Húsholder*, economist, housekeeper; *Vértshusholder*, innkeeper; *Hùsholderske*, a female housekeeper; *húsholdersk*,

*) Commonly written *Sölvskee, Mnnrskee.* ED.

economical, thrifty; from *holder*, keep; though *Holder*, *Holderske*, *holdersk*, are no words in the Language.

The first part is often a verb in the infinitive, as: *en Slibesteen*, a grindstone; *en Hvæssesteen*, a whetstone; *en Spisesal*, a diningroom; *en Liggehöne*, a brood-hen; *et Kjendebogstav*, a characteristic letter; *en Byggeplads*, a ground to build upon; *en Bærebör*, a handbarrow; *Talekunst*, rhetoric; *Talestol*, pulpit; *Trykkefrihed*, the liberty of the press.

Even substantives are often compounded without any change, as: *Kongestad*, royal city; *Húsmand*, peasant, cottager; *Raadstue*, townhall; likewise: *Storherre-n*, the grand-signior; *Alverden*, the universe; *Blaabær*, bilberries; *Lediggang*, idleness; *Hankön*, masculine gender; *Fémfingerurt*, cinquefoil; *hundredaarig*, centennial.

Sometimes the first part is slightly changed e. g. by throwing away a final *e*, as: *en Firskilling*, a penny; *Kvindfolk*, [commonly *Quindfolk*] woman; *Bettel-staven*, the beggar's staff i. e. beggary, from *betle*; or by inserting an *e*, as: *en Lýsesax*, a pair of snuffers; *en Æggeblomme*, the yolk of an egg; *en Gúlerod*, a carrut; *en Sýgestue*, an infirmary; *et Foredrag*, elocution; *forebygge*, prevent. In many instances this *e* is a relick of the Icel. gen. plur in *a*;*)

*) And such was the case with the examples given above: *Lysesax*, *Æggeblomme*, Iceland. *ljósasöx*, *eggjablóm*. Rask perhaps thought: "the Iceland word must here be derived from the Danish, since the thing probably was imported into the country by the Danes?" But no matter; the pure Icelandic elements of the word, viz. the Gen. pl. *ljósa*, and the pl. *söx*, existed in the Icelandic language long before the Danes saw the first (Dutch or English) pair of snuffers. In all likelihood snuffers were also first introduced into Iceland from England or Holland. *Sygestue*, evidently belongs to that class of compounds which is mentioned in the preceding paragraph (from *Syge* disease, or *Syge* patients) and *Fore-* in Foredrag is purely English as in "foretell", "forehead", "forespeach" &c. &c. and thus it may be doubted that the insertinon

e. g. *Landemærke,* frontiers; *Sædelære,* ethics; *Gjedeblad,* honeysuckle, Icel. *landa-mæri, siða-lærdómr,* &c. sometimes of an old gen. sing. in *-a, ar, ur,* e. g. *Penneknív,* penknife; *Sængestolpe,* bedpost, Icel. *pennaknífr, sængurstólpi.* Still more frequently an *s* is inserted, or the first part is only the gen. sing. as: *en Handelsmand,* a tradesman, merchant; *en Landsmand,* a fellow countryman; but *en Landmand,* is a husbandman; *en Baadshage,* a boat-hook; *en Vinduesrude,* a pane or square of a window; *et Tidsrum,* a period. — In a few instances *-n,* is inserted, in words adopted from the German, as: *Fruentimmer,* woman, *Grækenland,* (better *Grækeland),* Greece, *Ærenpris,* speedwell, a plant, Germ. *Frauenzimmer, Griechenland, Ehrenpreis.* Thus even *Hekkenfelt,* a euphemism for Hell, is a Germ. depravation of Icel. *Heklufjall,* mount Hekla in Iceland.

A few compound words require both parts to be put in the plural, as: *Bondegaard,* a farm, farmer's house, plur. *Bøndergaarde*; *Barnebarn,* grandchild, plur. *Børnebørn,* grandchildren.

Prepositions and adverbs very frequently take the first place in compounds, as: *bortødsle,* squander away; *afhugge,* cut off; *udtale,* pronounce, *Udtale,* pronunciation; *Udtryk,* expression; *Indtryk,* impression; *indelukke,* shut up, lock up; *nedrive,* pull down; *opbrænde,* burn down.

Many of these compound verbs may also be resolved, and the particle placed separately behind, e. g. *ödsle bort, hugge af*; but this transposition oftentimes makes a great difference in the signification; the compounds being used figuratively or metaphorically, the resolved verbs literally or properly. Ex.

indrykker, insert,	*rykker ind,* march into;
afstaar, cede,	*staar af,* dismount, alight;
oversætte, translate,	*sætter over,* cross, (as a ferry);

of an *e* is at all required to explain any phenomenon that occurs in Danish compounds. ED.

overgaar, excel,	*gaaer over*, pass (over);
udtrykker, express,	*trykker ud*, squeeze out;
igjenlöser, redeem,	*löser igjen*, untie again.

Prepositions and adverbs composed with the prep. *i* (in) generally lose this *i* in composition with nouns or verbs. Ex. *igjennem*, through, *gjennemborer*, pierce, *gjennemtrænger*, penetrate; *imod*, against, *Modstand*, resistance, *modvirker*, counteract; *imellem*, between, *Mellemgulv*, diaphragm; *igjen*, again, *gjentager*, repeat; *istèden*, instead, *Stedord*, pronoun, *Stedfader*, stepfather &c.

PART IV.

SYNTAX.

56. The Danish manner of constructing sentences, being pretty similar to the English, it is needless here to attempt any complete essay on the syntax. I shall therefore merely offer some remarks on the peculiarities of the Danish in this respect, following the order of the parts of speech, observed in the preceding pages.

57. *The articles.*

The definite art. of the adj. may sometimes be left out, the definite form of the adj. or pronoun showing sufficiently that it is to be understood, e. g. *förste Gang*, the first time; *samme Aften*, the same evening; *gamle Danmark*, old Denmark; especially in names as: *Ny-Holland*, *Lange-Bro*, *Runde-Taarn*, and in apostrophes, as: *Store Gud*, great God! *kære Ven*, dear friend; *Höjstærede Herre*, Respected Sir, &c. In a few instances the def. art. of nouns is added, as: *hele Sagen*, the whole business; *for störste Delen*, for the greatest part.

The def. art. is used with nouns expressing general notions, or things ideal, where the English has no article at all, e. g. *Natùr-en*, nature; *Skœbne-n*, fate; *Död-en*, death; *Liv-et*, life; *Menneske-t*, man; *Forsyn-et*, providence; *Himlen*, heaven.

The noun which governs a genitive is usually without any article, e. g. *Verdens Alder*, the age of the world; *Aarets Længde*, the length of the year; *et Legems Tyngde*, the gravity of a body.

The genitives of nouns, as also the possessive and demonstr. pronouns, like the article, require the definite form of the adj. following, as: *min bedste Ven*, my best friend; *dit gamle Losi*,*) your old lodging; *hendes lange Haar*, her long hair; *denne evige Snak*, this endless twaddle.

57. *The nouns.*

Of the genereal position of nouns we have spoken already (p 26), and stated the rule that the nominative usually is placed before the verb. In consequent propositions, however, the verb is followed by the agent. Ex. *hvis De ikke vil tro mig, saa kan jeg ikke gjöre ved det*, if you won't believe me, I cannot help it. *Da Freden var sluttet, rejste han udenlands*, when the peace was concluded, he went abroad. Also in conditional propositions, as: *Skulde jeg endelig gjöre det*, should I absolutely do it; *maatte jeg være saa lykkelig*, if I might be so happy. Likewise in questions, as: *sér De Skibet, som seiler der*, do you see the vessel, that sails there? *Taler De med ham i Morgen?* do you speak with him (see him) to-morrow? *Sés vi saa i Aften?* shall we then meet to-night, or shall I have the pleasure of seeing you to-night. — There are several adverbs or particles of time

*) Commonly spelt *Logis*. ED.

which produce the same effect, when placed at the head of the proposition, e. g. *derefter rejste han,* after this he departed; *aldrig troer jeg det,* never shall I believe this.

The genit., when expressed by termination is always placed before the word governing it. e. g. *for Guds Skyld,* for God's sake, also: in the name of God. *Hans Metóde,* his method. *Rigets Forvaltning,* the administration of the kingdom. *Mange Vandes Lyd,* the sound of many waters. Likewise possessive pronouns, as: *gaa din Vej,* get you gone; *hun glemte sin Paraply,* she forgot (left) her umbrella.

But the gen. is also frequently expressed by means of prepositions, not only *af,* of, but also *til,* to. &c. Ex. *det er Biskoppens Sön,* or *en Sön af Biskoppen,* it (he) is a son of the bishop; *en Bróder til Biskoppen,* a brother of the bishop; *Dören paa Huset,* the door of the house. *Versebygningen i Kædmons Parafrás,* the versification of Cædmon's paraphrase.

The preposition is entirely omitted after nouns of measure and the like, as: *en Mængde Mennesker,* a crowd of people; *et Stykke Træ,* a piece of wood; *en Lap Papír,* a scrap of paper; *en Pægl (Pæ'l) Øl,* half a pint of beer; *en Tønde Sild,* a cade of herrings; likewise *en Tønde stærkt Öl,* a cask of strong beer; *en Skæppe ny Hvede,* a bushel of new wheat. But when the name of the thing measured is definite, the prep. *af* must be expressed, as: *en Skæppe af den ny Hvede,* a bushel of the new wheat.

58. *The adjectives.*

In Danish the adjective is always placed before the noun, to which it belongs, e. g. *et gammelt Ord (Ordsprog),* an old saying; *den ny Móde,* the new fashion; *fra umindelige Tider,* from times immemorial. Except

when applied as surnames, as: *George den fjerde*, George the fourth; *Knud den Store*, Canute the great.*)

Many adjectives and participles may, without any intervenient prep., govern the nouns sometimes as indirect sometimes as direct objects, (or, in the Latin phraseology sometimes in the dat., sometimes in the acc.), e. g. *det er ikke Umagen værd*, it is not worth the pains (or worth while); *er det Mennesket gavnligt?* is it useful to man? *Han er mig intet skyldig*, he owes me nothing. Sometimes they take the noun together with a prep. after them, as: *er det gavnligt for Mennesket?*

59. *Pronouns.*

The two genders of the pronoun for the third person *(han, hun)*, when speaking of men, are usually applied according to the natural sex, not to the grammatical gender e. g. *Fruentimret viste meget Mod, da hun* (not *det*) *forsvarede sig imod saa mange Fjender*, the woman showed great courage, in defending herself against so many enemies. To *Mennesket* corresponds *han*, when it means a certain *man*, but *det*, when it means *mankind*, as: *Mennesket mærkede ikke, hvorlèdes han* (not *det) var stædt*, the man did not perceive how he was situated; *Mennesket og dets Medskabninger*, Man and his fellow creatures. In speaking of animals we use *det, den*, never *han*, or *hun*, except in poetical personifications and sometimes in vulgar speech.

The pronoun *De*, when applied to a single person (p. 33), is always construed with the sing. number of the verb, as: *Kommer De saa?* shall I expect you then? (not *Komme De). Gaar De paa Komédie?* do you go to the play?

*) Except also in verse, as: *Christian Bygmester stor*, Ghristian the great architect. *Oehlenschlaeger.* ED.

The numeral pronouns are placed before the nouns, as: *tó Huse*, two houses; *det förste Menneske*, the first man. When a numeral and an adjective are added, that which has the closest connection with the noun must be placed nearest to it, e. g. *tí hele Bröd*, ten entire loaves, but *hele ti Bröd*, means whole (not less than) ten loaves.

When speaking of the date of the year, we never apply the word *Tusind*, but merely count the *Hundrede*, e. g. 1829, *atten Hundrede og ni-og-tyve*, not, *ét Tusind aatte Hundrede og ni-og-tyve.*

60. *Verbs.*

In common conversation the plural form of the tenses is scarcely ever made use of, as: *vi rejser* (instead of *rejse*) *i Morgen*, we depart to morrow; *det er tidligt de Kongelige kommer* (for *komme*) *i Aften*, the royal family comes early to night; *de spiller dèt Skuespil gódt*, they perform that play well.

The active participles in *-ende*, are never used as gerunds, and rarely as parts of verbs, but more frequently as a sort of adjectives, as: 'fading graces', *falmende Yndigheder*; 'falling leaves', *faldende Löv*; 'calling to one another, and endeavouring in vain to extricate themselves', *raabende til hverandre og stræbende forgjæves at udrede sig*; but: 'on entering this first enclosure', must be rendered: *i det jeg traadte ind i dette förste Aflukke*, not *i* or *paa indtrædende*, &c. 'I was wandering', *jeg vandrede*, not *jeg var vandrende*, (see p. 54). 'The king being a hunting', *da Kongen (just) var paa Jagt.* 'The soldiers being afraid of the enemy', *Soldaterne som vare bange for Fjenderne.* 'In promising them some', *ved at love dem nogle.*

The English participles [or gerunds] in *-ing* must often be rendered in Danish by the infinitives, as: it is scarcely worth seeing, *det er næppe værd at se.*

61. *Particles.*

Of prepositions it is worth while to observe, how they are used to determine time; *i* with the genitive denotes a past time, as: *i Söndags*, last sunday; the nouns ending in *en*, lose their *n* before the genitive *s*, in this sort of regimen, as: *i Gaar Aftes* last night, yesterday evening (from *Aften*, otherwise the usual genitive is *Aftens)*; *i Morges*, this morning; *i Formiddags*, this forenoon; *i Forgaars*, the day before yesterday; *i Mandags Eftermiddags*, last Monday afternoon. — With the nominative it denotes the current time as: *i Aar*, this year; *i Dag*, to-day; or the time next following, as *i Aften*, this evening, which may be said both in the forenoon of the same day, and in the evening itself; *i Morgen*, tomorrow. But the word *Nat* not admitting the genitive *-s*, in the case just mentioned, when I say *i Nat*, it is entirely undecided, whether I mean the night preceding, or that succeeding this day; accordingly the real meaning of the phrase in each particular case can only be inferred from the context; e. g. *Regnede det i Nat*, did it rain last night? *faa vi Regn i Nat*, shall we have rain this night? The following days of the week are indicated by *paa*, on, as: *paa Söndag*, next Sunday; *paa Mandag Formiddag*, on Monday forenoon. For some few cases we have other prepositions or adverbial expressions, as: *ifjor (i Fjor)*, last year; *ad Aare*, next year. *Om* with the noun in the definite form corresponds to the English *a*, *in*, as: *Tjeneren faar 10 Rbd. (Rigsbankdaler) om Maaneden.* The servant (footman) has 10 dollars a month.

Also *om Aaret*, a year; *om Dagen*, a day; *om Morgenen*, in the morning, &c.

Of the conjunctions there is scarcely any thing remarkable to be said in the syntax, there being absolutely no subjunctive mode in the verbs. It may be observed however, that in combined sentences several conjunctions correspond to each other, so that when the one precedes the other may be expected to follow, such are:

baade — og,	both — and;
saavel — som,	as well — as;
saa (stor) — som,	as (great) — as;
ikke alene — men ogsaa,	not only — but also;
jo (meer) — des (bedre),	the (more) — the (better);
saa meget des — som,	so much the — as;
om — eller,	whether — or;
enten — eller,	either — or;
hverken — eller, / *ej heller,*	neither — nor;
vel — men ikke, / *men alligevel,*	indeed — but not; — but nevertheless;
vel ikke — men dog, / *— men vel,*	not indeed — but still; — but for all that;
deels — deels,	partly — partly;
da — saa (kan De),	as — (you may);
ihvorvel — (saa) dog,	although — yet;
skönt — (saa) dog ikke,	though — still not.

62. *Appendix.*

Though the Roman character is daily gaining ground, being introduced into the Transactions of the Royal Academy of Copenhagen and of most other learned Societies in Denmark and Norway, as also used in many excellent works of private authors on Antiquity, History &c. yet the monkish or Gothic form of the letters is still preferred by many, and must be learned also.

[Here Professor Rask inserted the ordinary German alphabet, to which he always had great aversion, and which he in vain attempted to persuade his countrymen entirely to discard. I have placed it at the beginning of the book since it still is in much more general use than the Roman alphabet. As long as the Germans preserve "the monkish or Gothic form" of the letters there is but small chance of the Danes abandoning it; but as soon as the Germans adopt the character now used by all the civilized nations of Europe (except the Russians and the Greeks) there is no doubt that the Danes will follow their example. ED.]

63. *Remarks on the German letters.*

In this character the capital J is also commonly used for the J e. g. in Israel and Jesus; though different figures have been invented by P. Syv, R. Nyerup & Mr. J. Jetsmark, in order to distinguish them; in writing however they are usually distinguished the J being prolonged beneath the line. Of the figures used in print that of Mr. Jetsmark, which I have here made use of, appears to have the preference.

The long ſ is constantly applied in the beginning of syllables, even in the combinations: ſt, ſl, ſp, ſt. Ex. ſlig, ſtal, ſtriver, ſparer.

For å, has also been proposed another figure, viz. a, which has been adopted by the celebrated Capt. Abrahamson in his first edition of Lange's *Dänische Gramm. für Deutsche*, as also by the author of these pages, in the first edition of his Icelandic Grammer; that he has afterwards preferred the å, is not only from patriotic motives; this figure being found in old Danish MSS. down to 1555, but also because it is introduced into several other languages, as Swedish and Laplandic, and has even been used in the upper German dialects, e. g. in Büschings und von der Hagen's *Sammlung deutscher Volkslieder*, Berlin 1807 and in J. F. Castelli's *Gedichte in nieder-*

österreichischer Mundart, Wien 1828, 8vo. Also in the Bornholm dialect by Mr. Skougaard, in the Farroic by the revd. Mr. Lyngbye, and in the Acra (on the coast of Guinea) by Capt. Schönning, whereas ɑɪ is used nowhere else in the world.

The ü and ä are German forms of the vowels *y* and *æ*, usually preserved in writing German names, although the Germans never use the Danish *æ* or *ö*, in writing Danish names, nor even in quoting titles or passages of books. Some writers also apply the ü for French *u*, e. g. Nüance, Büreau, pronounce *Nyanse*, *Byraa*.

The ß is entirely a German combination, not used even by the Germans themselves in the Roman character, and pronounced like the Danish *s*.

DIALOGUES

AND

EXTRACTS.

DIALOGUES

AND

EXTRACTS.

FAMILIAR DIALOGUES.

Förste Samtale.	*Dialogue 1.*
God Morgen!	*Good morning, sir* [1]*).*
Hvorlédes befinder De Dem[2])?	*How do you do?*
Hvorledes staar det til?	*How are you?*
Jeg takker, meget vel; ret bra'.	*Very well, pretty well, I thank you.*
Saa saa; ikke med det bedste.	*So so; not very well.*
Meget vel, til Tjèneste.	*Very well, at your service.*
Til Deres Tjèneste.	*At your service.*
Behág at sidde néd.	*Please to sit down.*
Vær saa ártig, og tag en Stol.	*Be so kind as to take a seat, a chair.*
Sid néd et Öjeblik.	*Sit down a moment.*
Jeg har et lille Besög at gjöre i Nabolauget.	*I must go to pay a visit in the neighbourhood.*
Hvad er Klokken?	*What is it o'clock?*
Hvad mener De?	*What do you think it is?*
Den er vel ikke aatte endnu.	*Scarce eight, I believe, yet.*

---

*) The Danish expression for sir, *Herre* or *min Herre*, is rarely used in conversation, except by servants.

*) The reciprocal forms, *sig, sit, sin, sine*, must be avoided, when the civil pronoun *De*, you, is the nominative; but if it were the usual plur. of the 3d person, it should be: *hvorledes befinde de sig?* how do they find themselves?

Hvad? aatte! den er slaaet ti.	*How? eight! it has struck ten.*
Er det muligt? er den saa mange! saa maa jeg ogsaa ud.	*Is it possible? is it so late! then I must go out also.*
Hvor skal De hen?	*Whither are you going?*
Jeg skal hen at spise Frókost hos Hr. N. N.	*I am going to breakfast with Mr. N. N.*
Og jeg skal hen at se til Fru N. N.	*And I am going to call on Mrs. N. N.*
A! det er nok saa godt, at besöge Damerne!	*Ah, that is much better indeed, to visit the ladies!*
Men naar sees vi nu igjen?	*But when shall we see each other again!*
Er De hjemme paa Tirsdag?	*Shall you be at home on Tuesday?*
Ja hvad Tid Dágs?	*At what hour?*
Aa, saadan Klokken sex eller syv.	*Why, about six or seven o'clock.*
Ja, om Aftenen er jeg hjemme, men kom saa ikke for silde, saa vil vi drikke Te nede i Haven.	*Yes, sir! in the evening I shall be at home, but don't come too late then, so that we may drink tea in the garden.*
Godt! som De befaler.	*Well, as you please.*
Farvel! (Adjö!)	*Good bye! (Adieu).*
Farvel! Farvel!	*Good bye!*

Anden Samtale. *Dialogue 2.*

God Aften Hr. N. N.	*Good evening Mr. N. N.*
Velkommen. Det fornöjer mig meget at se Dem.	*Welcome, sir! I am very happy to see you.*
Hvorledes har De levet, siden sidst, jeg havde den Fornöjelse at se Dem.	*How have you been, since I had the pleasure of seeing you last?*

Jeg er dem meget forbunden. Naar jeg undtager en lille Forkölelse, som har holdt mig inde et par Dage, har jeg været meget vel. Men De er fremmed; hvorledes finder De vort Klíma passer sig för Dem?

I am much obliged to you, sir. Excepting a little cold, that confined me to my room for a couple of days, I have been very well. But you are a foreigner, how do you find our climate agree with you?

Det er lidt köldt og fugtigt, i det mindste er Luften langt varmere og törrere i mit Fædreneland.

It is somewhat cold and damp, at least the air is much varmer and dryer in my native country.

Dét kan jeg tænke.

I dare say.

Men man maa indrette sin Klædedragt og Levemaade efter den Himmelegn, man lever under, og saa ikke bryde sig ret meget om Vejret, især i min Alder.

But one must adapt one's clothing and diet to the climate one lives in, and then not care too much about the weather, especially at my age.

Det har De Ret i; det var ogsaa min Grundsætning, da jeg var paa Rejser. — Men lad os nu gaa néd i Haven, og se om min Kone har noget Te til os.

You are very right; it was also my principle, when I was travelling. But come now let us go down into the garden, to see whether Mrs. N. [1]) has got some tea for us.

Det vil ikke være af Vejen.

Well, it won't be amiss.

---

*) A husband never calls his wife by his own surname as in English, but always says: *min Kone*, my wife, or *Fruen, Madammen, Moder*, according to her rank. *Frue*, lady, is used of noblemen's as also of most civil and military officer's wives, and *Fröken* of their daughters; *Madamme* of merchants' and tradesmen's wives, as also of the country clergymen's and clerks', *Jomfru* of their daughters; *Moder* (*Mo'r*) of a farmer's or common soldier's wife.

Tredie Samtale. *Dialogue 3.*

Nu, hvad synes De om vort Spróg, kan De forstaa noget af det?

Well, what do you think of our language? do you understand any thing of it?

Det klinger ganske bra', at höre paa, men jeg maa tilstaa jeg forstaar næsten slet intet af det.

It sounds pretty well to the ear, but I must confess, I understand almost nothing of it at all.

Men agter De ikke at lægge Dem efter det?

But don't you intend to study it?

Jo, jeg har i Sinde at benytte mig af den korte Tid, jeg kan opholde mig her, til at lære at kjende Sproget og Folket, og se hvad mærkværdigt her er.

Yes, sir! I intend to take advantage of the short time, I can stay here, to learn the language, to know the people, and to see every thing remarkable.

Nu, det fornöjer mig at höre, og jeg er vis paa, De vil ikke finde Spróget vanskeligt, og naar De har lært det, vil Literatúren rigelig belönne Deres Umage.

I am very glad to hear it, and I am sure you won't find the language difficult, and when you have learned it, the literature will amply repay your trouble.

I denne Henséende stoler jeg ganske paa Deres gode Hjælp, og haaber De har Venskab nok for mig, til at beære mig med Deres Raad og Vejledning. Men först maa jeg béde Dem at óversætte mig fölgende Ord, som jeg vil behöve hvert Öjeblik.

In this I entirely rely upon your kind assistance, and I hope you have friendship enough for me, to give me the benefit of your advice and instruction. But previously I must beg you to translate for me the following words, which I shall require to use every moment.

Méget vél, Hr. B! vil De give mig Pen og Blæk,

Very well, Mr. B. will you give me pen and ink, I will

skal jeg oversætte dem for Dem i et Öjeblik. Jeg kan vel skrive det paa det samme Papir.	*translate them for you in a moment. I suppose I may write on the same paper.*
Ja, jeg önskede just at have de danske Udtryk lige over for de engelske, og helst förån, saa at Öjet kan træffe dem först, naar jeg seer paa Bladet.	*Yes, sir! I just wanted to have the Danish words right over against the English, and rather in front, in order that the eye may meet with them in the first place, when I look at the paper.*
En trékantet Hat, rúnd Hat.	*A cocked hat, round hat.*
Pudder, Pomáde, Tándpulver.	*Powder, pomatum, toothpowder.*
Kam, Börste, Tandbörste.	*Comb, brush, toothbrush.*
Nátsjorte, Manskjétsjorte. [1]	*Nightshirt, frilled shirt.*
Náttröje, Hálsklæde, Séler.	*Underwaistcoat, neckcloth, braces.* [2]
Vest, Kjóle, Frakke.	*Waistcoat, coat, great coat.*
Beenklæder, Buxer.	*Pantaloons, breeches.*
Uld-, Traad-Silke-strömper.	*Woollen, thread-silk stockings,*
Stövler, Sko, Spænder.	*Boots, shoes, buckles.*
Töfler, Nathue, Slaaprok.	*Slippers, nightcap, nightgown.*
Handsker, Lommetörklæde, Stok.	*Gloves, pocket-handkerchief, stick.*
Tobáksdaase, Ring, Ur.	*Snuffbox, ring, watch.*
Tándstikker, Kikkert, Öjeglas.	*Toothpick, pocket-glass, eyeglass.*
Tégnebog, Pung, Blýant.	*Pocketbook, purse, pencil.*
Bánkosédler, Vexler, Smaapenge.	*Bank-notes, bills of exchange, change, or small coin.*
Visitkaart, Sæng, Sængeklæder.	*Calling cards, bed, bedclothes.*

[1]) Commonly Natskjorte, Mansketskjorte. ED.

[2]) The first Edition has *gallowses*, which certainly is never heard, either in shops, or in common conversation; still it is found in such dictionaries as abound in slang terms: it surely is rather vulgar. I have put the usual expression. ED.

Lágener, Púder, Sófa.	*Sheets, pillows, sofa.* [1]
Skríverpult, Spillebórd, Spísebórd.	*Writing-desk, card table, dining-table.*
Spejle, Stúeúr, Lampe.	*Looking-glasses, chamber-clock, lamp.*
Lýsekrone, Gardiner, Overkopper.	*Lustre, curtains, cups.*
Underkopper, Ske-er, Kniv-e og Gafler, Dúge, Servietter.	*Saucers, spoons, knives and forks, table-clothes, napkins.*
Haandklæder, Flasker, Glas.	*Towels, bottles, glasses.*
Tallèrkener, Lýs, Lýsesax.	*Plates, candles, snuffers.*
Lýsestager, Snústobak.	*Candlesticks, snuff.*
Lák, Signét, Obláter.	*Sealing-wax, seal, wafers.*
Skrívpapir, Pòstpapir, Makulatúr.	*Writing-, post-, wastepaper.*
Ridehest, Vognheste, Vogn.	*Saddlehorse, [or riding horse] coach horses, carriage.*
Karét, Kusk, Tjèner.	*Coach, coachman, servant, or footman.*
Vært, Skræder, Skómager.	*Landlord, tailor, shoemaker.*
Barbér, Haarskærer, Bòghandler.	*Barber, hairdresser, bookseller.*
Urmager, Hattemager, Handskemager.	*Watchmaker, hatter, glover.*
Se, her har De de forlangte Ord paa Dansk, men kan De nu ogsaa læse dem?	*Well, sir! here you have the words required in Danish; but now, shall you be able to read them?*
Tilvisse, De har jo skrévet dem med latínske Bògstaver, de andre falde mig	*Surely, I see you have written them in the English character, the other indeed I*

[1]) The first edition has *couch* which is a different piece of furniture like that which is called *chaise longue*, or Canapee on the continent. ED.

rigtig nok meget vånskelige at finde ud af.

find it very difficult to make out.

Men de ere dog uundgaaelig nödvendige at kjende endnu.

As yet, however, it is indispensably necessary to know them.

Ja, naar jeg först bliver lidt bekjendt med Spröget, haaber jeg de gamle Bogstaver vil blive mindre vånskelige for mig. Mener De ikke ogsaa det?

Oh, when only I get a little acquainted with the language, I hope the old letters will be less difficult to me. Don't you think so too?

Upaatvivlelig.

No doubt of it.

Fjerde Samtale.

Dialogue 4.

Nu hvorledes gaar det med Deres Dansk? Har De gjört betydelig Frèmgang i den alleréde?

Well, how do you get on with your Danish? Have you made considerable progress.

Langt frå, jeg forstaar næsten intet.

Far from it, I know nothing almost.

Man siger dög, De taler ret bra'.

It is said however, you speak it very well.

Gid det var sändt! Men dé, der sige det, tage méget fejl.

Would it were true! but those who say so, are much mistaken.

Jeg forsikrer (Dem), det har været mig sagt (ell. jeg har hört det).

I assure you, I was told so.

Jeg kàn nogle faa (ènkelte) Ord, som jeg har lært üdenad. Og hvad der er nödvèndigt for at begynde at tale.

I can say a few words, which I have got by heart. And as much as is necessary to begin to speak.

Vel begyndt er halv fuldèndt siger man; men Begyndel-

Well begun is half finished, we say; however, the be-

sen er ikke nok allígevel; De maa ogsaa se til at naa Enden.

ginning is not all, you must also try to make an end.

Har De ingen gode dansk-engelske Såmtaler at ånbefale mig.

Are there no good Danish and English Dialogues, which you can recommend me.

Jo vi har en ganske brúgbar Bearbèjdelse af J. Marstons Såmtaler, paa Engelsk og Dansk ved afgangne Kapt. Schneider, som er údkommen i Köbenhåvn 1812.

Yes, sir! we have a pretty good edition of J. M. Dialogues in English and Danish, edited by the late Cap. S., and printed in Copenhagen 1812.

Er dèt en stôr Bòg?

Is it a large volume?

Den údgjör omtrènt 15 Ark i Oktáv.

It makes about 15 sheets in octavo.

Og hvor faaes den (faaer man den)?

And where is it to be had?

Hos Bòghandler Brummer, Nr. (Nummer) 52 paa Östergade. Der er ogsaa en anden kaldet *Lommebog for Samtalen i Fransk, Tydsk og Engelsk 1822,* som De kan faa paa samme Sted.

At Mr. Brummer's, the bookseller No. 52 Eaststreet. There is also another, called Taschenbuch für die Conversation in fremden Sprachen, &c. *which you may get in the same shop.*

Hvilken af dem er den bedste?

Which is the best of them?

Den sídstanförte er den rígeste, og temmelig nöiågtig i Dansken, blot paa Retskrivningen nær; men saa er der baade fransk og tysk Oversættelse, som De vel ikke bryder Dem om. —

The last mentioned is the richest, and pretty accurate in the Danish, except the orthography; but then there is a French and a German translation, which I suppose you don't care about. —

Men De maa bestàndig tale Sprògget, enten vel eller ilde.	*But you must always be speaking the language, whether well or ill.*
Jeg er bange for at begaa Sprògfejl.	*I am afraid to commit blunders.*
Frygt àldrig for dèt; Dànsken er ikke vànskelig, men tværtimód nærmere ved Engelsk end Hòllandsken eller nóget àndet lèvende Spròg,	*Never fear; the Danish is not hard, but rather more nearly related to the English, than Dutch or any other living tongue.*
Méner De dèt?	*Do you think so, sir!*
Jeg vil vise Dem nogle Ord, som gòdtgjöre det.	*Why, I will show you some words to prove it.*

Öje — *eye*; Arm — *arm;* Finger — *finger*; Negl — *nail*; Side — *side*; Taa — *toe;* jeg — *I*; de — *thèy;* dem — *them;* deres — *theirs*; vi ere — *we are*; have — *have*; give — *give;* tage — *take;* saae — *sow;* Plov — *plough;* see — *see*; först — *first;* af — *of;* ad — *at* &c.

ANEKDÓTER.

af *A. Fr. Höstes* Miniatúrbiblioték for Mórskabslæsning.

En [1]) havde været paa Komédie. Man spúrgde ham, hvad Stykke [2]) de havde haft? — "Skam faa dèn, der veed det, " [3]) sagde han, „det règnede ösende Vande, [4]) den Gàng [5]) jeg gik derhèn, og saa fik jeg ikke læst Plakáten." [6])

[1]) *One, a person.* [2]) *piece, play.* [3]) *A vulgar phrase, to which they sometimes add,* om det er mig, *literally: shame (confusion) to him who knows it (if I be it).* [4]) *pouring (down) waters.* [5]) *the time, when.* [6]) *the placard.*

En Mànd fortälte i et Sèlskab, at hans Fáder en Gàng, [1]) i en Alder [2]) af ti Aar, var faldet [3]) úd igjennem et Vindue i trédie Etásje [4]) néd paa Sténbróen. „Fra trédie Etásje!" áfbröd [5]) en ùng Herre [6]) ham, "naa, [7]) han slap vist ikke [8]) derfrá [9]) med Lívet."

[1]) *one time, a certain time.* [2]) *age.* [3]) *Should properly be* falden *but in the* 2d *conj. we often disregard the com. gend. of the partic. pass. e. g.* hvor er den udgivet? *where it is printed?* [4]) *story, also written in the French way,* Etage; *the Danish expression is* Stókverk. [5]) *interrupted, from* àfbryder (p. 50). [6]) *Gentleman.* [7]) *dear me;* [8]) *literally: he escaped certainly not, ɔ: he surely did not escape.* [9]) *from it.*

Stjærneskytten.[1])

En österrigsk [2]) Rekrùt stód om Nàtten Skildvagt [3]) ved et astronómisk Observatórium, og saae [4]) tánkelös op til Taarnet [5]) og den skýfri [6]) Himmel. [7]) Dà kòm der nógen [8]) oppe paa [9]) Taarnet, efter [10]) Rekrùttens Méning, [11]) med en lang Flint, [12]) og sigtede [13]) dermèd òpad [14]) i Mörket. "Men nú gad jeg dòg vidst," [15]) sagde Rekrùtten forùndret [16]) til sig sèlv, hvad dèn Kárl [17]) vil skýde nú om Nàtten," og dèrhos [18]) fùlgde han med Öjet den Rètning, [19]) som Observatörens Kikkert [20]) betègnede. [21]) Plúdselig [22]) skjéde [23]) der et Stjærneskud, [24]) og af Forùndring tàbte Rekrùtten Geværet, [25]) i dèt han

[1]) The star-shooter. [2]) Austrian. [3]) centry. [4]) looked. [5]) the tower. [6]) cloudless, clear. [7]) sky. [8]) somebody. [9]) on the top of. [10]) according to. [11]) idea, according to his idea ɔ: as he fancied, thought. [12]) musket. [13]) aimed. [14]) upwards. [15]) But now I should like to know. [16]) wondering. [17]) that fellow. [18]) at the same time. [19]) the direction. [20]) the telescope. [21]) pointed out. [22]) suddenly. [23]) there happened (to fall). [24]) a shooting star. [25]) his firelock.

raabte:[26]) „Naa![27]) nú har jeg sét dèt mèd![28]) Han har rigtig trùffet den!"[29])

[26]) crying out. [27]) dear me. [28]) well, I have seen that too! (i. e. Who did ever see the like o' that)? [29]) hit it, or hit his mark.

En Köbmand módtog [1]) en Fèm-shillings-Mynt, [2]) der ikkę sýntes ham at være ægte, [3]) og spùrgde dèrfor en Sàgförer, [4]) som gik forbi [5]) hans Butik, [6]) hvad han meente [7]) om den. Dènne besaae [8]) den opmærksomt; [9]) forsikrede [10]) den var gód, pùttede den til sig, [11]) og forlångte [12]) endnú [13]) 1 Shilling 8 Pence, da de èngelske Love have fàstsat [14]) en Taxt af 6 Shilling 8 Pence for et hos en Sàgförer indhentet Raad. [15])

[1]) got, received. [2]) five-shilling-piece. [3]) literally: which nòt seemed (to) him to be genuine (or good). [4]) attorney, or solicitor. [5]) passed by. [6]) shop, they write also *Boutik*, or even *Boutique*. [7]) meant, thought. [8]) viewed. [9]) attentively. [10]) assured (him, that). [11]) literally: to himself, i. e. in his pocket. [12]) demanded. [13]) still, besides. [14]) as the E. L. have fixed ɔ: the E. L. having fixed. [15]) literally: for an, at (of) a solicitor received, advice.

SMAAFORTÆLLINGER.[1])

Af samme Bog.

Det fàrlige Hèrberge.[2])

En simpelt [3]) klædt Mand, der rèjste til Fóds, [4]) tog en Aften, paa Vejen fra Condé til Lunze, et Öjeblik [5]) ind i [6]) et lille ènsomt liggende [7]) Hús i Egnen [8]) af Peruwetz,

[1]) tales, stories. [2]) lodging. [3]) simply, poorly. [4]) on foot (p. 26). [5]) moment. [6]) *tog ind i*, entered into, stopt at. [7]) onely situated. [8]) neighbourhood, environs.

hvor kun en Húsmand [9]) og hans Kóne bóede. Médens [10]) han údhvilede sig, [11]) fortálte han, [12]) hvorhén han gik, [13]) og strágs [14]) fáttede [15]) Værten [16]) den Beslútning, [17]) at ánfalde [18]) ham paa Vejen.

Næppe var den Rèjsende [19]) gaaet en Fjerdingvèj [20]) videre, för en maskéret Mand, trúende [21]) at myrde ham, áffordrede ham [22]) hans Penge. Den Frèmmede [23]) býder [24]) ham tólv Dukáter med den Forsikring, [25]) at han ikke hár flére hos sig, [26]) og faar dèrved Lov, [27]) til at drage vídere; [28]) men strags falder det ham ind, [29]) at han, ved at fortsætte [30]) sin Rejse i en saa úsikker Egn, let [31]) kunde stöde paa [32]) andre ikke saa lèttroende [33]) Rövere, og han beslútter [34]) derfor, at vende tilbáge [35]) til det Hús, han nýlig [36]) har forládt, [37]) og blíve dér Natten óver. Han finder kun [38]) Kónen hjèmme, [39]) fortæller hende, hvad der er mödt ham, og tillíge [40]) at han har tólvtúsende Dukáter hos sig. Værtinden [41]) ánviser ham, [42]) paa hans Forlángende, [43]) da hun ikke har anden Plads, et Leje [44]) paa et lídet Loft.

Næppe er han gaaet op, förend Værten, som havde gjórt en Omvej, [45]) kommer hjem, og giver Kónen de

---

[9]) cottager. [10]) while. [11]) rested himself. [12]) told he ɔ: he told (p. 74). [13]) went, i. e. was going. [14]) immediately. Some authors write *strax*, but contrary to the common rule for *x*, the adverb being derived from the adj. *strag*, and written in Germ, *stracks*, in Dutch *straks*. [15]) conceived, formed. [16]) the landlord. [17]) resolution. [18]) attack. [19]) traveller. [20]) a quarter of a Danish mile, about one Engl. mile. [21]) threatening. [22]) demanded of him (p. 72). [23]) stranger, foreigner, traveller. [24]) offers. [25]) with the assurance ɔ: assuring him. [26]) about him. [27]) gets thereby permission. [28]) literally: draw farther, i. e. travel on. [29]) it strikes him. [30]) by continuing. [31]) easily. [32]) fall in with. [33]) credulous. [34]) resolves. [35]) turn back. [36]) even, just. [37]) left. [38]) only. [39]) at home (p. 67). [40]) also, even. [41]) the landlady (p. 62). [42]) assigns to him, shows him. [43]) request (p. 63). [44]) couch, bed. [45]) round-about way.

nylig rövede tolv Dukáter. „Dumrian![46]) (siger hun) du veed ikke, at Manden har tolvtusende Dukáter; — dér er han."[47]) Hvorhos hun peger[48]) op til Tágkammeret,[49]) hvor han, efter hendes Forméning,[50]) ligger og sover.[51])

Imidlertid[52]) laa den Fremmede paa Luur[53]) med Öret, og hörte tydelig[54]) fölgende Anslag[55]): Manden skulde först gaa op paa Löftet, give ham et Slag i Hóvedet, og kaste[56]) ham úd af Vinduet. Hun selv skulde staa berédt nédenfor,[57]) og med et Hug[58]) give ham sin Rest.[59]) Da den Frémmede hörer dette, söger[60]) han först overált[61]) en Udvej,[62]) for at úndkomme;[63]) men Flúgt var umúlig.[64]) Han léder nú rundt omkring, for i det mindste[65]) at finde et Instrumént til Forsvar,[66]) og lykkeligvis faar han fat paa[67]) et stórt Stykke Træ, der kan tjene[68]) til Kölle.[69]) Bevæbnet dermed vænter han sin Fjende, og ligesom[70]) denne træder ind,[71]) giver han ham et Slag i Hóvedet, der bedöver[72]) ham, og kaster derpaa Legemet[73]) úd igjennem Löftslúgen[74]). Kónen, der staar tilréde nédenfor i Mörke, tvivler intet Öjeblik,[75]) at det er den Frémmede, der er nédkastet, styrter[76]) over Legemet, og húgger, med en skarp Öxe, sin Mands[77]) Hóved af i eet Hug.

Kónen blév hæftet,[78]) og fik sin fortjente Lön.[79]).

---

[46]) blockhead! [47]) — there he is. [48]) points. [49]) the garret. [50]) in her opinion. [51]) sleeps (p. 47). [52]) in the mean time. [53]) *laa paa Luur*, lay in wait, lurked, listened. [54]) distinctly. [55]) project, plan. [56]) throw (¼). [57]) beneath. [58]) stroke, blow. [59]) his rest, what was farther required (to kill him). [60]) seeks (½). [61]) every where. [62]) a passage. [63]) escape (p. 61). [64]) impossible, impracticable, from the old verb *mue*, i. e. *maatte* (p. 44). [65]) at least, must not be confounded with *i mindste Maade*, in the least. [66]) defence. [67]) he gets hold of. [68]) serve. [69]) club. [70]) just as, the moment. [71]) enters. [72]) stuns. [73]) the body. [74]) aperture. [75]) literally: doubts no moment, i. e. has not the slightest doubt. [76]) rushes or falls over. [77]) her husband's [78]) put into jail. [79]) her deserts.

Stormbruden og Paradisæblet.

Hvó der [1]) den 17de April 1823 har staaet bag ved den ny Vejrmölle [2]) ved Lagjewnike i det brombergske Distrikt, vil, hvis [3]) han er kommen derfrá [4]) med Livet, kunne [5]) fortælle os fölgende Samtale.

Lise, en fattig forældrelös [6]) Pige [7]) og Prestens [8]) sejstenaarige Barnepige, [9]) omhyggeligen opdraget [10]) i hans Hus, og med et ret nydeligt [11]) Ansigt, vilde i Dag som hvér Dag, siden [12]) Foraaret [13]) begyndte, vandre paa den venlige Fodsti [14]) forbi [15]) Möllen til sin Husbondes [16]) Jordlod, [17]) da Möllersvenden [18]) Ludvig, den rige Möllers muntre [19]) Sön, stak Hovedet ud [20]) igjennem Möllehullet, [21]) og raabte spögende; [22]) Ah, Lise, skön Lise! [23]) — Halv uvillig [24]) og halv venlig blev hun rödmende staaende [25]) og spurgde: nu, hvad er der da igjen? [26])

Ludvig. Som [27]) jeg sagde dig i Gaar, skön Lise! har du ikke Lyst [28]) til at gifte dig? [29])

Lise. Skön Ludvig! naar han [30]) kun vil ærgre [31]) mig, saa lad mig heller gaa min Vej i Ro! [32])

---

[1]) He who. [2]) behind the new windmill. [3]) if. [4]) has escaped. [5]) *vil kunne*, may. [6]) orphan. [7]) girl. [8]) the parson's. [9]) nursery maid 16 years old. [The common spelling is: *sextenaarig*. ED.] [10]) carefully educated; it should be *opdragen* (p. 45), but in the 2d conjugation we usually prefer the termination *-et* for *en* in the few participles, that may still admit the *-en* in the com. gend. [11]) right, or very pretty. [12]) to-day as every day, since. [13]) the spring. [14]) footpath. [15]) by, passing by. [16]) her master's. [17]) field, piece of ground. [18]) the young miller. [19]) sprightly. [20]) put out, forth his head. [21]) the hole in the mill. [22]) cried jestingly. [23]) fair Elisa! [24]) angry. [25]) *blev staaende*, stood still. [26]) what is the matter now again? [27]) as, the same as. [28]) a mind. [29]) marry. [30]) you, *han hun* are often used as terms of civility among the common people, or to persons of that class by those of higher rank; sometimes they express a slight displeasure: *du* is used much more in Danish than *thou* in English, but expresses a greater familiarity or superiority than *han, hun*. [31]) annoy. [32]) rest, peace.

Disse Ord sagde hun gànske mùt,[33]) i dèt hun vendte sig bòrt.[34])

Lùdvig. Men hùlde[35]) Lise, du skal jo ikke[36]) gifte dig med mig! Jeg veed vel, en Möller er for lidt[37]) for dig.

Lise. Som Kommissionær*) vil jeg slèt ikke[38]) have mèd ham at bestille.[39]) Adjö!

Lùdvig. Altsaa dog hèller[40]) som Fríer?[41]) O Lise, Möllehullet er desværre[42]) for lidet, men kunde jeg komme igjennem, saa styrtede jeg strags i dine Arme. Hör en Gang[43]) — húsker du vel endnú,[44]) for fire, fem Aar siden?[45]) — Du vilde dèn Gàng endnú ikke[46]) gjælde for[47]) en vòxen Jòmfru[48]) — da gav du mig vel endòg[49]) et Kys, naar jeg om Söndagen[50]) tog dig paa Skòdet,[51]) og gav dig en Pèberkage.[52]) Nú har visselig Herr Pàstoren[53]) forbúdet[54]) dig det; ikke sàndt,[55]) han præker dàglig fòr dig?

Lise. Ikke sàndt, han havde nu Rèt,[56]) til at præke: "Lise! begív dig til dit Arbeide,[57]) og lad ikke Mölleren have dig til bèdste?"[59])

Lise var nú virkelig i Begréb med at gaa,[59]) hvor gjèrne hun ènd[60]) gad[61]) höre den òvermodige,[62]) men

---

[33]) in a pout. [34]) turning herself away. [35]) charming. [36]) *jo*, is a particle very difficult to translate, the purport of the whole context is: who says that you shall, or: nobody says that you shall. [37]) *lidt*, contracted of *lidet* (p. 28), is only used as adverb or noun. *) agent. [38]) not at all. [39]) have to do with. [40]) consequently rather. [41]) suitor. [42]) indeed, or I am sorry to say. [43]) hark a moment. [44]) do you still recollect. [45]) ago. [46]) then still you would not. [47]) pass for. [48]) fullgrown young lady (see the note p. 87). [49]) you would even give me. [50]) p. 79. [51]) on my lap, knees. [52]) gingerbread-cake. [53]) the parson. [54]) prohibited; as to the order of *dig det* see p. 26. [55]) is not it true that, or *does not he*, placed after the next proposition. [56]) a right, occasion to. [57]) go to your (thy) work. [58]) make a fool of you, take you in. [59]) was really about going away. [60]) *hvor ... end*, however. [61]) would, liked. [62]) presumptuous.

èllers[63]) bráve Ynglings[64]) Spög,[65]) da dènne endnú en Gàng[66]) raabte: Lise, skön Lise! — Og sé![67]) Lise vendte sig rigtig nòk[69]) endnú en Gàng òm[69]) og ló.

Hold Forklædet op, lille Hex![70]) raabte Mölleren, dèr hár du[71]) et splinternýt[72]) Æble fra Páradis. Förend hun havde fáttet en Beslùtning, om[73]) hun skulde holde Fòrklædet frèm[74]) eller ikke, rullede Appelsinen[75]) hèn[76]) for hendes Födder, en Frùgt, som hun áldrig[77]) havde seet för. Spis,[79]) mín Eva! raabte Kárlen léende, spís det skönne Páradisæble!

Den lèttroende Pige fùlgde Raadet, og trak Mùnden ganske skæv[79]) ved den bitre Smág[80]) af Skallen;[81]) men vèl bemærkende, at en söd Sáft[82]) flöd úd[83]) af Hullet, löb hun hùrtig[84]) bòrt med Appelsínen, imédens Lùdvig spòttende[85]) raabte efter hende: Líse, skön Lise; hvordán smáger Páradisæblet?

Pigen stód nu paa Prèstens Màrk,[86]) og brùgte Spáden paa det flittigste[87]) for at indhente[89]) det forsömte.[89]) For hendes Tanker svævede[90]) úden Ophör[91]) den mùntre[92]) Lùdvig. Saaledes gjör han med álle Píger, sàgde hun til sig sèlv, alle gjör han Löjer[93]) med, og tænker ikke — — — o! og dòg[94]) er han en gód, bráv Drèng,[95]) flittig, òrdentlig, og hvor smùkt klæder[96]) ikke hans ný blaa Klæder[97]) ham! — Er det da ikke ògsaa skikkeligt[98]) áf ham, at han, om ogsaa[99]) af Óvergivenhed,[100])

---

[63]) otherwise. [64]) p. 62. [65]) jest. [66]) still another time. [67]) look! [69]) verily. [69]) *om*, about. [70]) witch, enchantress. [71]) there you have o: there is for you. [72]) a spick-span-new. [73]) *om — eller*, see p. 79. [74]) forth, up. [75]) the orange. [76]) up to. [77]) never. [78]) eat ($\frac{1}{2}$). [79]) literally: drew the mouth entirely awry. [80]) taste. [81]) shell, peel. [82]) sweet juice. [83]) ran out, came out (p. 44.) [84]) speedily. [85]) with raillery. [86]) field. [87]) very diligently. [89]) retrieve, make good. [89]) neglected. [90]) hovered, presented himself. [91]) incessantly. [92]) playful. [93]) fun. [94]) however. [95]) boy ($\frac{2}{2}$). [96]) *klæder ham smukt*, becomes him well. [97]) clothes. [98]) kind or kindly done. [99]) although perhaps. [100]) frolick, wantonness.

gáv mig den skönne Frùgt? han méner det dóg vel [1]) ikke saa méget slèmt mèd mig.

Médens hun tænkte dette, nærmede en huul Làrmen [2]) sig meer og meer fra Làndsbyen. En sèlsom, [3]) kraftig [4]) Lùftströmning, [5]) kun indtagende [6]) en Brédde af omtrènt [7]) 200 Skridt, [9]) styrtede sig i dette Öjeblik hid fra Krùschwitz, og förte först Tàge [9]) og Rùder, siden [10]) Skùre og Stàlde [11]) bòrt mèd sig. Luften, der stèdse blév mörkere, röbede [12]) den eensomme Píge en sig nærmende Orkán; hun ílede [13]) hèn bag et lévende Gærde, [14]) der rigtig nòk [15]) endnú var ùden Löv; [16]) men dog tæt [17]) nók til nógenlunde [18]) at brýde Vindens Màgt. Nú flöj allerede Straaet fra hendes Hjèms Tàge tættere og tættere hèn [19]) óver hende; en stór Láde [20]) flàgrede [21]) lig en Fjéder höjt oppe i Luften, derpaa [22]) igjen skinnende Linned, der var fört bort fra Blégen. [23]) Men nú — frygtelig bráger og brúser [24]) og hviner det. Lise seer bævende [25]) ivèjret: ved Gud, det er den ný Vèjrmölle, der uimodstaáelig grében [26]) af Lùftsströmningen, lig en Papírsdrage, [27]) súser hèn [28]) óver hendes Hóved. Ved dette skrækkelige Sýn táber [29]) hun Bevidstheden. [30]) Dog snárt vækker en forfærdelig Knágen [31]) hende. Stòr-

---

[1]) *vel*, is a particle difficult to translate, it expresses a probability, where there might still be some doubt; like: I should think, possibly. [2]) a hollow noise. [3]) strange. [4]) powerful. [5]) current of air. [6]) that only filled. [7]) about. [8]) paces (§ p. 19). [9]) roofs [10]) afterwards. [11]) sheds & stables. [12]) betrayed, *röber* is betray, indicate, but *forraader* is betray perfidiously, like a traitor. [13]) hastened. [14]) a quickset hedge. [15]) indeed. [16]) leaves (§ p. 21). [17]) tight, thick. [18]) in some degree. [19]) away. [20]) barn. [21]) fluttered. [22]) after that. [23]) bleaching-ground. [24]) roars. [25]) trembling. [26]) irresistibly seized. [27]) a kite. [28]) whistles away. [29]) loses, *tabe* is to lose for a time, or something that may be found again, but *miste* is to lose entirely, or something most difficult to recover. [30]) consciousness. [31]) craeking noise.

men havde lådet sit Bytte [32]) fare, [33]) og kun faa [34]) Skridt fra hende laa Möllen nédstyrtet. [35])

Efter dètte tórdnende Fåld var det paa een Gang [36]) igjen blévet stille [37]); men med unævnelig [38]) Forfærdelse [39]) begréb [40]) Lise at Lùdvig maatte være begrávet méd [41]) under Möllens Ruíner. Véklagende [42]) irrede [43]) hun omkring den lette Bygning, og den sandeste Smertes [44]) Taarer strömmede néd ad hendes Ansigt. O, var Húset dog kun [45]) styrtet néd paa mig, raabte hun jamrende; [46]) ti [47]) hvorledes skal jeg óverleve [48]) hans Död? Aldrig har han ánet, [49]) hvorméget mit Hjærte tilhörte [50]) ham, hvor kært ethvèrt Blik, [51]) ethvèrt Órd åf ham vàr mig: aldrig, det vidste jeg vèl, kunde jeg blíve hàns, men dòg havde jeg ham kær, [52]) og var lykkelig ved kun at sé [53]) ham. Nu er han borte, den vènlige Yngling; knúst [54]) ligger han ùnder sönderbrudte [55]) Bjælker! [56])

Imédens den skyldfri [57]) Jòmfrus héle Hjærte údgöd sig [58]) i saadanne Kláger, löd [59]) pludselig Ludvigs vèlbe-

---

[32]) booty. [33]) go, (fall.) [34]) few. In order to distinguish this word from the verb *at faa*, to get, some authors write in the latter case *faae*, to make it analogous with the other verbs in *-e*, but this is in direct opposition to etymology, the pronoun being a dissyllable in the old tongues, Anglosaxon *feawa*, Icel. *fáir*, Lat. *pauci*, the verb on the coutrary a monosyllable, Anglos. *fón*, Icel. *fá*, Swed. *få*. [35]) hurled down, thrown down. [36]) all at once, suddenly. [37]) calm. [38]) unspeakable. [39]) horror. [40]) understood, thought. [41]) with (the other things). [42]) lamenting. [43]) strayed. [44]) pain, grief. [45]) were but only! [46]) lamenting. [47]) for, also written *thi*, but improperly, it seems, the old *th* being in all cases changed to *t* or *d* in the modern Danish, even in this same word in the composition *fordi*, because, not *fordhi*. [48]) survive, live after. [49]) imagined, also written *ahnet*, according to the Germ. orthography. [50]) belonged to, was devoted to. [51]) look. [52]) I had him dear, i. e. he was dear to me. [53]) by merely seeing (p. 77). [54]) crushed. [55]) broken to pieces. [56]) beams. [57]) guiltless, harmless. [58]) poured forth itself, streamed forth (the heart i. e. feeling). [59]) sounded, was heard.

kjendte Stèmme:[60]) Lise, hùlde Lise!" — Fn Skjælven[61]) löb över hende; módlös[62]) saae hun sig òm, og see! Ludvigs Höved stak mùntert úd af Möllehullet, der nú vendte op ad mod[63]) Himlen. Ogsaa i hans Öjne stóde Taarer. "Bedste Lise," sagde han forvirret,[64]) hjærtelig èlsker "jeg dig: — hjælp mig kùn úd af dèn fordömte Klèm-"me;[65]) ti Dören ligger néd mod Jörden; — góde Bárn, "skal vi saaledes erfáre[66]) at vi ère bestèmte[67]) for hin-"ànden? Brýd kùn dette Brædt[68]) hèr löst, Vinden har "alleréde[69]) lösnet Sömmene[70]) en Smúle.[71]) — Gúd, "hvilken Helvedfart![72]) — men, Lise, hár du mig dà saa "kær? — Nu, Herren skje Tak,[73]) jeg er úde og i dine "Arme!" Hèr trykte han[74]) den glödende, af óvervældende[75]) Glædesfölelse sitrende[76]) Pige til sit Bryst. "Guds Stòrm selv har bragt mig til dig, — Stòrmbrúden er blèven en Jòmfrubrúd — kòm, kòm til min Fáder, lad os sige ham det, og hente[77]) hans Tilládelse![78])

Arm i Arm, betràgtende[79]) hinànden med sálige[80]) Blikke, vandrede de Elskende til Làndsbyen.[81]) Paa dèn Plàds, hvor den ny Mölle havde staaet, fandt de Lùdvigs Húsfæller[82]) samlede med lýdelige[83]) Véklager. Som en

---

[60]) well known voice. [61]) shivering. [62]) downcast. [63]) towards. [64]) perplexed. [65]) strait. [66]) learn. [67]) destined. [68]) board, also written *Bret*. [69]) already, in Danish it must be written with *ll*, being composed of *alle-rede*, Icel. *alla-reðu*, whereas neither *ale* nor *erede* afford any meaning whatever. But *alene*, should be written with one *l*, being compounded of *al-ene*, wholly-one, i. e. al-one, Icel. *aleinn*. [70]) the nails. [71]) a crum, bit. a little. [72]) hell-flight. [73]) literally: to the lord be praise (that). [74]) he pressed: *presser* is also a Danish verb, but used of squeezing violent compression, compulsion &c. [75]) overwhelming. [76]) trembling, sometimes, though erroneously, written *sittrer*, or in the Germ. way *zittrer*, but the Icel. *titra*, has but one *t* in the middle. [77]) fetch, get. [78]) permission. [79]) gazing upon. [80]) blissful. [81]) the village. [82]) house-fellows, inmates. [83]) loud.

Aand víste han sig midt iblándt dem. Den gamle Fáders Hènrykkelse[84]) ved at gjénsee ham, óvergik[85]) ál Beskrivelse, og da Sönnen fòrestillede[86]) ham den undséelige[87]) Lise, som sin Brúd, saa blév den förste hèftige Glæde[88]) en blid Forénings Stifter.[89]) Snàrt var den forældrelöse[90]) og fattige Pige òmskabt[91]) til en Madam Möllermesterinde, og hun plejede[92]) síden ofte, i Fölelsen af sin Lykke, at sige: "Eva mistede Pàradiset, da hun spiste Frùgten, for mig har Pàradisæblet betýdet[93]) Paradis selv."

Dèn som iövrigt,[94]) ikke vil trò[95]) denne sandfærdige[96]) Hìstòrie, der rigtig nòk, formédelst Vejrmöllen, der súsede igjennem Luften med Mölleren, smáger stærkt[97]) af et Æventyr, han èfterlæse[98]) den paa graat[99]) Makulatúr)[100]) trykte[1]) Haude- og Spenerske Tidende[2]) Nr. 57 for 13de Maj 1823, under blandede Bekjèndtgjörelser,[3]) hvor han vil óvertyde sig[4]) òm, at Historien om denne Vindmölle[5]) ikke er Vind.

---

[84]) rapture. [85]) passed. [86]) introduced, presented. [87]) bashful. [88]) excessive joy. [89]) founder. [90]) orphan. [91]) transformed. [92]) used. [93]) signified. [94]) as for the rest. [95]) believe. (p. 41). [96]) true. [97]) much. [98]) consult. [99]) grey. [100]) waste-paper. [1]) printed. [2]) Gazette. [3]) miscellanous advertisements. [4]) convince himself. [5]) a Germanism for *Vejrmölle*, preserved here, to make a quibble with the following word *Vind*.

Fédor og Evelina.

en Fortælling, [1]) (af F. C. Hillerups *Italica*, 1. B. S. 85).

Første Capitel.

Mig öpgaar nú min Mörgenröde, [2])
jeg Sólen skúer [3]) i sin Glands; [4])
hvor túsind svåge Hjærter blöde,
jeg vundet hár min Sèjerskrands. [5])

Jeg glemmer [6]) éder, svundne [7]) Dage!
I skal ej någe [8]) meer mit Bryst.
I kan ej komme meer tilbåge;
Natúrens Skönhed [9]) er min Tröst.

Omtrent tré danske Mile fra Röm hæver sig [10]) Albánerbjergenes isolérede Gruppe. De ere ligesaa mærkværdige [11]) for Beskúeren [12]) med Hénsyn til den hènrivende [13]) Natúrskönhed [14]), der prýder [15]) dem, som til de ærværdige [16]) Minder [17]) fra den klassiske Oldtid, [18]) der overált frèmbyde sig for Vàndrerens Blik. Hvó har vel [19]) nógensinde [20]) tilbragt [21]) skönne Öjeblikke [22]) i de vènlige Smaàstæder [23]) Fraskàti, Marino, Kastel Gandólfo, Albáno, Nèmi, og mindes ikke [24]) med vémodblandet [25]) Glæde sit behágelige [26]) Ophold [27]) i Sködet [28]) af en fortryllende [29]) Natúr? Hvo vandrede vel [30]) ved Albánersöens [31]) og

---

[1]) tale, novel. [2]) aurora, dawn. [3]) behold (½). [4]) splendor. [5]) trophy, wreath of victory. [6]) forget (½). [7]) gone, past (p. 48). [8]) not gnaw, torment, trouble. [9]) beauty. [10]) rises to the view. [11]) remarkable. [12]) spectator. [13]) ravishing. [14]) beauty of nature, beautiful nature. [15]) adorns (½). [16]) venerable. [17]) remembrances, monuments. [18]) antiquity. [19]) *vel* of this particle see p. 101 note 1; here it seems to answer to the Engl 'who shall have.' [20]) ever. [21]) spent. [22]) moments. [23]) small towns. [24]) does not call to mind. [25]) mixed with sa dness. [26]) agreeable. [27]) sojourn, stay. [28]) bosom. [29]) charming. [30]) shall have wandered, cf. note 19. [31]) of the lake of Albano.

Némisöens romántiske Brædder,[33]) og önsker ikke ófte med et Længselssuk,[33]) at gjénsee disse uforglémmelige[34]) Egne?

I længst[35]) hénsvundne Tíder, förend Historien endnu lader sin Röst[36]) höre om Ménneskenes Færd[37]) i disse Bjerge, har en frygtelig[38]) Vulkán raset[39]) hér, og éfterladt gigántiske Spór[40]) af sin Tilværelse[41]) ved[42]) tre stóre, i den fjærneste Oldtid údbrændte,[43]) Kratere, som nu ére forvándlede til en yppig[44]) blómstrende Dál, og tó máleriske,[45]) Indsöer,[46]) som de med höje tilbágetrædende[47]) Skraaninger,[48]) der ómgive[49]) dem, danne[50]) tre trágtformige[51]) Fordýbninger.[52]). Det störste af disse fórdums[53]) Krátere er Albánersöen, der förer Návn efter Ståden Albáno, og hár en æggeformig Skikkelse.[54]) Dybt néde, umiddelbart ved[55]) dens Brædder, slynger sig[56]) en Fódsti gjennem blómstrende Frúgthåver og smaa Viinplantninger,[57]) der ómgive det kláre Vándspejl[58]) lig en yndig Krands,[59]) fra hvilken Jórdsmonnet[60]) hæver sig flére[61]) Húndrede Fód[62]) i en temmelig stejl[63]) Skraaning, som bestandig[64]) træder meer tilbáge, jo meer den fjærner sig fra Dýbet, og éndelig áfbrydes af den övre[65]) Bræd, som med den yppigste Vegetatión danner Randen[66])

---

[32]) shore, some authors write *Bredder*, but *Brædder* seems to be preferable: 1) on account of the pronunciation: 2) in order to distinguish it from *Bredde*, breadth, latitude, which is pronounced with, *é*; 3) to show its derivation from Icel. *barð*, and its analogy to Swed. *brädd*. [33]) sigh of longing. [34]) not to be forgotten. [35]) long ago. [36]) her voice. [37]) doing. [38]) terrible. [39]) raged. [40]) traces. [41]) existence. [42]) by or in, i. e. left as traces of its existence three great &c. [43]) burnt out. [44]) rich. [45]) picturesque. [46]) lakes. [47]) retreating. [48]) declivities. [49]) surround, encompass. [50]) form ($\frac{1}{7}$). [51]) funnel-like. [52]) cavities. [53]) old. [54]) form, appearance. [55]) close to. [56]) winds itself i. e. runs a winding (foot-path). [57]) vine-plantations. [58]) expanse of water. [59]) graceful wreath. [60]) the ground. [61]) more (than one) i. e. several. [62]) feet (p. 24). [63]) steep. [64]) always, continually. [65]) upper. [66]) the brim.

af den Tragt eller det Bæger,[67]) hvis Bund[68]) Söens Overflade[69]) er. En for det méste[70]) smal[71]) Vej löber langs om denne höje Kyst[72]) og frembyder paa en skön Dag höjst maleriske Udsigter[73]) óver den melankólske dýbe Sö og dens idylliske Omgivelser,[74]) hvor disse Bjerges höjeste Spidse,[75]) *Monte cavo* kàldet, næsten àllevegne[76]) àfgiver[77]) en behágelig Hvilepunkt[78]) for Öjet. Fra Ståden Albáno selv kan man ikke öjne[79]) Söen, men maa, for at see den, gaa et Par Hundrede Skridt údaf Byen, og bestandig òpad. Da ståndser[80]) man tilsidst[81]) paa en höj Brink, hvorfrá man skúer den dunkle[82]) mystiske Vàndflade[83]) dybt under síne Födder. Til vènstre förer[84]) en Allee af gamle ærværdige Ege[85]) og andre Træer til den lille Bý Kastel Gandolfo, som med sin Kuppel og sit pávelige[86]) Sòmmerslot[87]) hæver sig paa de ujævne[88]) Höjder. I Bàggrunden taarne sig[89]) de fjærne Appenniner, blandt hvilke det taggede[90]) Sorakte nú tildags[91]) *San Oreste*, tróner[92]) i stille[93]) Majestæt. Til höjre[94]) seer man Klòsteret Pallazuòla, som bebóes[95]) af smùdsige[96]) Munke, der prale[97]) af at en portugisisk Prinds engang har lévet og döet som en ráget[98]) Bróder[99]) i deres Midte.[100]) Denne fromme Fyrste[1]) hedder endnú bestandig i dette Klòster *il Portoghesíno*, og hans

---

[67]) cup. [68]) bottom. [69]) surface. [70]) mostly. [71]) narrow. [72]) coast. [73]) views. [74]) environs. [75]) point, top, peak. [76]) every where. [77]) affords. [78]) point of rest. [79]) see, reach with the eye. [80]) stops. [81]) at last. [82]) dark. [83]) sheet of water. [84]) on the left hand leads. [85]) oaks. [86]) papal. [87]) summer-seat. [88]) uneven, unequal. [89]) tower. [90]) jaggy. [Rask spells *det taggede*; the common spelling is takkede ED.] [91]) now-a-days. [92]) sits on the throne, stands. [93]) calm, unshaken. [94]) on the right hand. [95]) is inhabited (p. 41). [96]) filthy. [97]) boast [98]) shaved. [99]) brother, friar. [100]) In their middle, among them. [1]) pious prince, *Fyrste* is generally said of a reigning prince, *Prins* of a young person of blood royal. It should be written without a *d*, as also: *Provins*, *Krans*, *Dans*, *Glans*, there being no *d* in these roots, but the orthography with *nds* (from the German *nz*) is still more common.

Billede, som hænger paa en Væg i disse mörke Haller, er Gjénstand [2]) for Munkenes Beundring. [3]) Mere mærkværdigt for den fordomsfri [4]) Rejsende er en römersk [5]) Konsuls Gravmæle, [6] som findes i Klösterhaven [7]). Noget fra [8]) dette Mysticismens og Sværmeriets [9]) eensomme Sæde hæver sig paa Bjergets Skraaning den usle [10]) men höjst romantiske Landsby, *Rocca di Papa*, der, paa den vildeste og selsomste [11]) Maade, ligesom [12]) hænger ned ad Klipperne, [13]) og i det fjærne [14]) ikke er ulig en Svalerede. [15]) Naar Vandreren er kommen igjennem [16]) denne lille By, træder han ud [17]) paa en anseelig Slette, [18]) der förer Navn af *Campo di Anibale*, enten fordi Hannibal der har haft sin Lejr mod Römerne, eller, som andre vel [20]) med mere Grund [21]) antage, [22]) fordi Römerhæren [22]) der havde sin Lejr, for at iagttage den kartaginensiske Feltherre. [24]) Naar man nu har vandret et Stykke frem paa denne Slette, staar man ved Foden af den Bjergtop, [25]) som förer Navn af *Monte cavo*, og hæver sig omtrent tretusinde Fod over Middelhavets [26]) Overflade. Denne Spidse, som har Skikkelse af en afkortet [27]) Kegle, [28]) bestiger [29]) man med Magelighed [30]) og Sikkerhed ved Hjælp af en antik brolagt [31]) Vej, der i Oldtiden förte op til et Jupiters-Tempel, som dannede Bjergets höjeste Punkt. Til dette ærværdige Sted, som nu har maattet [23]) vige [33]) for et Munkekloster, droge [34]) i de hedenfarne [35])

---

[2]) object. [3]) admiration. [4]) unprejudiced. [5]) Roman, pronounce *rommersk*. [6]) tomb. [7]) convent garden. [8]) A short way from. [9]) fanaticism. [10]) miserable. [11]) most strange. [12]) as it were. [13]) from the rocks. [14]) at a distance. [15]) swallow's nest. [16]) is come through, has passed through. [17]) comes out. [18]) considerable plain. [19]) camp. [20]) may here be rendered *perhaps*. [21]) reason. [22]) believe. [23]) the Roman army. [24]) General. [25]) summit. [26]) of the Mediterranean. [27]) shortened. [28]) cone. [29]) ascends. [30]) ease. [31]) paved. [32]) has been obliged to. [33]) give way. [34]) drew i. e. went, cf. p. 96 note 27, it p. 44. [35]) deceased, gone past.

klàssiske Dáge de sèjrende[36] Fèltherrer, för at bringe Gúdernes Fader Tàk og Prís, for den forùndte[37]) Lykke i tilèndebragte Krige.[38]) Naar nu omsíder[39]) den Rejsende staar paa denne ophöjede[40]) Pùnkt, da lönnes[41]) den Möje, som Opgangen[42]) kan have foraarságet ham, fùldkommen ved en vid og fortryllende Udsigt over de historiske Egne, som en Gang i hènsvundne Dage spillede[43]) en saa forbàvsende[44]) Rólle[45]) paa Jórdkloden.[46]) Mód Vèsten svæver Blikket úd[47]) óver den ùhyre Slette, i hvis Midte Vèrdens[48]) gámle Hóvedstad[49]) tróner med sin Péterskuppel, og úd over denne Slette táber Öjet sig i Middelhavets umaalelige[50]) Sölvflade, som i den ýderste[51]) Horisònt sýnes at smelte sammen[52]) med Luften. Mod Nórd og Öst begrændses[53]) Sýnskredsen af Apennínernes höje Bjèrgmasser,[54]) blandt hvilke[55]) Soràkte hæver[56]) sit trúende Hóved; mod Sýden òpdager[57]) man Öer og Fòrbjerge[58]) i Kòngeriget[59]) Neápel. Vil man nu betrágte[60]) de nærmere Gjènstande, da óverskuer[61]) man Albànerbjergenes héle Masse med alle déres yndige Skove[62]) og mange Smaastæder, og dybt néden under sig[63]) seer man de òmtalte[64]) Indsöer, der danne en Figúr ej ùlig et Par Briller,[65]) som dog rigtig nok blive[66]) lidt urègelrette, da Albánersöen er méget större end Nemisöen.

Herúd til dette Pàradis drage utàllige Mennesker om Sommeren,[67], for at òmbytte[68]) Hóvedstadens kvælende[69])

---

[36]) victorious. [37]) alloted. [38]) wars ($\frac{2}{2}$). [39]) finally. [40]) elevated. [41]) will be repaid. [42]) ascent. [43]) played. [44]) astonishing. [45]) part. [46]) the globe. [47]) literally: the look hovers out, i. e. the view extends. [48]) of the world. [49]) capital [50]) immeasurable. [51]) farthest. [52]) mingle with. [53]) is bordered. [54]) mountain-masses. [55]) amongst which. [56]) raises ($\frac{1}{1}$). [57]) discovers, espies. [58]) promontories. [59]) the kingdom. [60]) view. [61]) overlooks. [62]) woods. [63]) far beneath oneself. [64]) mentioned. [65]) spectacles. [66]) are. [67]) see p. 78. [68]) exchange. [69]) suffocating.

Atmosfære med Bjèrgenes réne, forfriskende[70]) Luft. Især[71]) besöges disse Egne flittigen af de mange Rejsende, som gæste[73]) det skönne Italien, og frèmfor ålt[74]) af de fremmede Kùnstnere[75]) der òpholde sig i Ròm for sine Stùdiers Skyld.[76]) Staden Albáno, hvis Navn man ùdleder[77]) af det gamle *Alba longa*, som har ligget[78]) der i Nærheden, er hverken smuk eller stór. Déns Folkemængde[79]) óverstiger[80]) næppe halvtrédie Tùsinde Indvaanere, og blandt dens Bygninger kunne vistnok[81]) kun faa gjöre Kráv paa[82]) arkitektónisk Skönhed. Nogle Ruiner fra Oldtiden, blandt hvilke det saakaldte Horátiernes og Curiátiernes Grávmæle,[83]) som vel næppe nógensinde har været et Grávmæle, ère det éneste, som hèr kan vække Opmærksomhed hos Kunstens og Històriens Venner. Men er Albáno sèlv ikke i Stand[84]) til at fængsle[85]) den Rejsende, da formaar[86]) vel det smilende Làndskab hvori den ligger, at fylde Vandrerens Bryst med Glæde og Beùndring over Hespèriens hèrlige[87]) Natúrskönhed.

I denne lille Ståd òpholdt sig[88]) en Gang i de vårme Sòmmermaaneder en ung Rùsser,[89]) som vi ville kalde Fédor. Som Sön af en fòrmuende[90]) Köbmand[91]) i St. Pétersborg, vàr han af sin Fáder blèven nödsaget[92]) til at lægge sig efter[93]) Handelen,[94]) men Merkúr var alt for tör[95]) en Guddom for den fantasírige[96]) Yngling, der med sin héle Sjæl tilbad[97]) Skönhedens évige Poesi. En Rejse, som den unge Hàndelsmand en Gang i Forrètnin-

---

[70]) pure, refreshing. [71]) especially. [72]) are visited ($\frac{1}{2}$). [73]) go to see. [74]) most of all. [75]) artists (p. 62). [76]) on account of, because of. [77]) derives. [78]) been situated. [79]) amount, number of inhabitants. [80]) exceeds. [81]) certainly. [82]) make pretensions to. [83]) sepulchral monument. [84]) incapable, not able. [85]) captivate. [86]) can, has power. [87]) excellent, eminent. [88]) lived. [89]) Russian [90]) wealthy. [91]) merchant. [92]) obliged [93]) to apply himself to. [94]) commerce. [95]) dry. [96]) of a lively imagination. [97]) adored.

ger[98]) maatte gjöre til Frankfurt am Mayn, öpflammede[99]) hans Kærlighed til Landskabsmaleriet, [100]) hvilket han alt [1]) længe havde yndet og dyrket [2]) i sine Fritimer, [3]) til den höjeste Grad, og nedsænkte [4]) ham i Fortvivlelse [5]) for nögen Tid. En ulykkelig Lidenskab [6]) for et Fruentimmer, der var hans Hjærte uværdig, og spillede Gjek med [7]) hans Rolighed [8]) forögede [9] hans dybe [10]) Misfornöjelse[11]) med sin Stilling,[12] og gjörde ham Opholdet[13]) i Fædrenelandet forhadt. [14]) Omsider indsaae[15]) Faderen, at hans Sön ikke var bestemt[16]) af Naturen, til at blive en stor Köbmand, og indvilligede[17]) i, at Fedor ganske öpofrede[18]) sig til Kunsten. Den gamle, som aldrig gjörde nöget halvt, tilstod[19]) end mere[20]) den henrykte Yngling en betydelig Understöttelse, hvorved denne saae sig i Stand til at uddanne[21]) sig i Kunsten i fremmede Lande. Efterat have öpholdt sig et Par Aar i Tyskland og Svejts,[22]) drög den unge Landskabsmaler över Alperne néd i Kunstnernes forjættede Land,[23]) det af Naturen saa begunstigede[25]) og ved Historien saa ærværdige Hespérien. Med Henrykkelse hilste[23]) Fedor Rafaels og Michelangelos Fædreland, da han fra Bjergene förste Gang öjnede Lombardiets yppige Sletter. Det herlige Milano, Bologna med sine Arkader og Medicæernes Stad, som med Rette[26]) förer Navn af den skönne, tildroge sig[27]) i höj Grad hans Opmærksomhed og Beundring; men alting maatte vige for det Indtryk, som den evige Tiberstad gjörde

---

[98]) in (commercial) business. [99]) inflamed. [100]) landscape-painting. [1]) already. [2]) favored and cultivated. [3]) plur. leisure, also called *Fritid*. [4]) plunged. [5]) despair. [6]) passion. [7]) sported; mocked. [8]) peace of mind. [9]) increased. [10]) deep, i. e. high, great. [11]) discontent, disgust [12]) situation. [13]) his stay. [14]) odious. [15]) perceived, saw. [16]) destined. [17]) consented. [18]) devoted. [19]) granted. [20]) moreover. [21]) perfect. [22]) Germany and Switzerland. [23]) the promised (i. e. holy) land, Canaan. [24]) favored. [25]) saluted. [26]) justly. [27]) attracted.

paa hans dybt bevægede[28]) Sjæl. Hèr svælgede[29]) han i Nydelsen[30]) af Kunstens og Natúrens Skatte,[31]) og drömte sig ved Beskúelsen af Oldtidens Mindesmærker tilbáge i de Tider, da[32]) Rom var dèt, som det endnú kúnde og búrde være. Hér forglèmte den únge Máler[33]) en uhèldig[34]) Kærligheds bittre Kvåler,[35]) og lévede éne for sin skönne Kunst. For sit Födeland havde han paa Grund af det omtalte forstyrrede Fòrhold en vis Rædsel,[36]) og önskede at kunne forblíve[37]) saa længe som muligt i det Land, hvor Skönheden og Historien med Tryllekraft[38]) fængsle det fölende Gemyt.[39]) Han kunde saa meget mere frit[40]) nære dette Önske, som han havde tvènde[41]) Brödre hjemme, der vare Faderen behjælpelige[42]) i hans Håndelsforretninger, og tillige ansète[43]) for at være kyndige[44]) i deres Fag.[45])

Det var en Löverdag Morgen og nètop[46]) den förste Septèmber, da den únge Russer méget tidlig[47]) rejste sig[48]) fra sit Leje, i den Hensigt at gaa úd, for at optage[49]) et Par Skidser[50]) af Albánersöens meest romàntiske Partíer. Den kláre Himmel oplivede hans Sjæl, og snárt stód han færdig[51]) til sin Vandring. I en Overkjole[52]) af grönt Bomuldstöj,[53]) med Vest og Pantalonger af graat Lærred,[54]) Skó af úfarvet[55]) Læder, og paa Hóvedet en lysegúl[56]) Straahat, som var omvunden med et rósenrödt Baand,[57]) traadte Kunstneren ud af sit Værelse. Om Skulderen hang en Taske,[58]) hvorí hans

---

[28]) moved, touched. [29]) revelled, rioted. [30]) enjoyment. [31]) treasures (⅔) p. 20. [32]) when. [33]) painter. [34]) unlucky. [35]) afflictions (⅔) [36]) terror. [37]) and wished to be able to stay, or that he might stay, i. e. to stay. [38]) magic power, charm. [39]) mind. [40]) freely. [41]) two. [42]) *vare behjælpelige*, aided, assisted. [43]) (*vare*) *ansete*, were thought, passed for. [44]) skilled. [45]) profession. [46]) just. [47]) early. [48]) rose (½). [49]) make. [50]) sketches. [51]) ready. [52]) great-coat. [53]) cotton-stuff. [54]) linen. [55]) uncoloured. [56]) light-yellow. [57]) rose-coloured riband. [58]) bag, scrip.

Skidseböger og Tègneredskaber[59]) laa. I Lommen[60]) havde han en lille Kùrveflaske[61]) med Viin og noget Bröd; i Haanden bár han en sammenrullet[62]) Sólskjerm[63]) paa en lang Stang,[64]) der i Enden var forsýnet med en Jærnspids, og hèrtil var endnu fàstbunden[65]) en lille Fèltstól[66]) af dèt Slàgs, som Kunstnerne betjéne sig áf[67]) paa deres Vandringer. Da han havde drukket sin Kaffe i Pòsthuset, befálede han sin Stövlepudser[68]) Raimondo, at komme med et Æsel til Kastel Gandolfo Klokken ni, hvor Kunstneren selv vilde indtræffe til samme Tid. Derpaa gik Fédor igjennem Gaderne, hvor han af Almuen[69]) blév betrágtet[70]) med den gódmódige[71]) Nysgjerrighed,[72]) der er Sýdboerne[73]) saa ejendommelig.[74]) Saa méget mére var dette Tilfældet[75]) hèr, som den únge Mànds Udvortes[76]) i höj Grád var i Stånd til at gjöre et behágeligt Indtryk paa enhvèr, som förste Gang saae ham. Fédors höje ranke[77]) Vækst,[78]) hans livfulde Bevægelser og ràske Gang faldt paa en behagelig Maade i Öjet.[79]) Hans Ansigtsfarve[80]) var saa mörk og kràftig,[81]) at man gjèrne[82]) kunde have àntaget ham for en Spànjer eller Neapolitáner. De tykke Lokker vare glindsende[83]) sorte, og hans Öjne vare, som Ariosto udtrykker sig, to lysende Sole; ti sjælden have to sorte Öjne funklet[84]) med et saa betýdningsfuldt[85]) Lív og flammende Fölelse som hans. Naar han betragtede nógen i Alvaar[86]) eller Vréde, da syntes hans Blikke, líg usynlige[87]) Dòlke,[88]) at ville gjènnembore[89]) Mènneskets Inderste,[90]) men naar hans Sjæl var stèmt[91]) til Mildhed

[59]) drawing instruments. [60]) the pocket. [61]) basket-flask. [62]) rolled up. [63]) umbrella. [64]) staff. [65]) tied. [66]) field-chair. [67]) make use of. [68]) boot-cleanser. [69]) the vulgar, common people. [70]) gazed on. [71]) good natured. [72]) curiosity. [73]) the inhabitants of the southern countries of Europe. [74]) peculiar. [75]) the case. [76]) exterior. [77]) slender, by a germanism they say also *slank*. [78]) growth. [79]) *faldt i Öjet*, struck the eye. [80]) complexion. [81]) energetic. [82]) easily. [83]) glittering. [84]) sparkled. [85]) significant. [86]) earnest. [87]) invisible. [88]) daggers (‡). [89]) pierce through. [90]) the inmost, the very soul. [91]) disposed.

og Munterhed, da maatte den blide brændende Lue, som udströmmede af hans Öje, fast[92]) være i Stand til at kunne smelte det haardeste Hjærte, at trylle[93]) en Fjende til en Ven, og opvække Kærlighedens almægtige Flamme i det koldeste Pigehjærte.[94]) Hans Næse var fiin og veldannet, Munden liden og udtryksfuld,[95]) og de skönt formede Tænder af en blændende[96]) Hvidhed, som end mere forögedes ved den dunkle Farve, der var udbredt[97]) over Ansigtets[98]) skönne Ovál. I Örerne bar han smaa gyldne Ringe, som stak smukt af[99]) mod det rävnesorte[100]) Haar og dunkle Skæg. [1]) Paa den höjre Haands Mellemfinger [2]) sad en Ring, hvori der paa mörkeblaa Grund funklede Ordet *Amitié* i straalende [3]) Diamanter. Ved Afskjeden [4]) fra Hjemmet gav hans Fader ham den med disse Ord: "Min Sön! Kærlighed forbitrede din Ungdom: maatte [5]) et trofast [6]) Venskab, ægte som disse Diamanter, forsöde [7]) dig din Manddom!" Den Gang troede Fedor, at en Kunstner var ophöjet över Amors Paafund, [8]) og forlod sit Fædreneland med det begejstrede Forsæt, [9]) at leve gänske aléne for sin Kunst med Opofrelse af [10]) jordiske Tilböjeligheder.[11]) Hvorvidt det stod i hans Magt, at udföre dette Forsæt eller ej, vil det Följende [12]) vise. [13])

Da den unge Måler var kommen udaf Staden Albanos snævre Gader, og havde naaet Söens höje Kyst, drejede han om [14]) til venstre gjennem den herlige

---

[92]) almost. [93]) charm (½). [94]) maiden's heart. [95]) expressive. [96]) dazzling. [97]) spread. [98]) of the (his) face. [99]) set off well, made a fine contrast to. [100]) raven black. [1]) beard. [2]) middle-finger. [3]) radiant, sparkling. [4]) at the (his) leave, i. e. when he took leave. [5]) may, or would to God that. [6]) faithful. [7]) sweeten. [8]) devices, tricks. [9]) enthusiastic purpose. [10]) with sacrifice of, i. e. sacrificing. [11]) earthly propensities. [12]) the following, i. e. the succeeding pages. [13]) show (½). [14]) he turned about.

Allé,[15]) som förer til Kastel Gandolfo. Omtrent midt imellem disse to Smaastæder ligger der ved Vejen et Munkekloster, udenfor hvilket der findes en halvrund[16]) aaben Plads, omgivet af Træer med mange fritstaaende Altere, hvor de Troende forrette[17]) deres Andagt.[18]) Nærmest ved Söen, næsten lige[19]) ved den nedgaaende[20]) Skraaning, staaer der et ældgammelt[21]) stört Træ, som med sine tætte vidtudstrakte skyggefulde Gréne, yder Vandreren et köligt Hvilested. Paa en Bænk[22]) under dette Træ satte Fédor sig, og tabte sig i Beskúelsen af det herlige Maleri, som laa údbredt for hans Öje. Den kláre Mórgensol óplyste Söens skovrige[23]) Brædder, og *Monte Cavos* Top spejlede sig[24]) i den blanke,[25]) sölvblaa Vándflade.

Kunstneren tog en Tegnebog[26]) frem, og begyndte at skidsére,[27]) men under Arbejdet[28]) hensank han ofte i saa dybe Tanker, at hans Haand blev liggende[29]) uvirksom[30]) paa Papiret. Han gjennemlöb i Tanken flére Begivenheder[31]) i sit Liv, og hans sjælfulde Ansigtstræk[32]) gjengáve,[33]) som et tró Spejl, ált hvad der föregik[34]) i hans Indre.

„O! tænkte han, i det han med glædesdrukne[35]) Blikke skúede omkring sig, hvor herligt er ikke Itálien? Med Rette skildre[36]) Rejsende og Digtere os dette Land saa skönt, og vistnok bör enhvér, som er saa lykkelig at betræde[37]) dets hellige Jórdbund, takke Försynet for en saadan Gáve, hvorefter saa mange Túsinde forgæves[38]) stræbe med brændende[39]) Længsel;[40]) úden[41]) nógen-

---

[15]) walk. [16]) semicircular. [17]) perform (‡). [18]) devotion. [19]) directly, close. [20]) sloping. [21]) very old. [22]) bench, form. [23]) woody. [24]) was reflected. [25]) bright. [26]) pocket-book, drawing-book. [27]) sketch. [28]) during the work. [29]) remained lying, lay a long while. [30]) inactive, idle. [31]) accidents. [32]) features. [33]) reflected. [34]) passed. [35]) joy-drunken. [36]) paint, describe. [37]) set foot upon. [38]) in vain. [39]) ardent. [40]) longing, desire. [41]) without.

sinde at òpnaa[42]) deres Öjemed.[43]) Himmelske Fåder! jeg takker dig, fordi du lód det falde i min Lòd, at betræde Històriens og Skönhedens Land, og gav mig Hjærte til at föle Natúrens évige Herlighed, og Villie til at elske det góde hos Itáliens Indvaanere. — Ak, desværre, altfor ofte blíve de grúsomt miskjendte,[44]) især af Persóner, som åldrig have været údenfor deres Móders Kökkendör. Hvor faa Rejsende gives der dog i Grunden,[45]) som nýde det der tilbydes dem? Vel forsýnede med politiske og religiöse Fördomme, see de alting fra en falsk Sýnspunkt, miskjende Öjeblikkets Herlighed, og forbitre sig enhvèr Glæde ved útidige Sammenligninger med Hjemmet. Men hvor ofte angre de[46]) deres daarlige Adfærd,[47]) naar den svundne[48]) Frýd[49]) for évig[50]) er tabt. Jeg veed mig selv, tròds[51]) alle mine andre Svágheder, dòg frí for denne Fejl. Mit kære Fædreneland; Gud veed, at du er mit Hjærte kær, men dèrfor[52]) er jeg ikke saa blind for andre Landes Fòrtrin,[53]) at jeg éne og aléne skulde söge det fortræffelige[54]) i dit Sköd.[55]) Tilgiv[56]) mig, at Albánersöens yppige, smilende Brædder förekomme[57]) mig skönnere end Ilmensöens taagefulde[58]) Kyster. Sælsomme Forvildelse[59]) af den skábende[60]) Natúr! Hvorfòr[61]) skulde jèg, i hvis Aarer[62]) Sýdens héde Blód flammer i sin héle Lúe,[63]) just födes[64]) ved Névas ískolde Vande under den trésindstyvende Bréddegrad?[65]) Herre Gùd! Du kunde jo lígesaa gòdt have ladet mig see Dàgens Lýs ved det viinrige Astrachan eller paa det blomstrende[66]) Krimm. Der have vi jo ogsaa Viindruer,[67]) évig glödende Róser og duftende[68]) Melóner lígesom hèr. Jeg havde da paa een

---

[42]) reaching. [43]) aim, end. [44]) misjudged. [45]) in fact ($\frac{3}{2}$). [46]) do they repent. [47]) foolish behaviour. [48]) gone past. [49]) joy. [50]) eternally. [51]) in spite of, notwithstanding. [52]) for all that. [53]) superiority ($\frac{3}{1}$). [54]) the excellent, i. e. excellency. [55]) lap, bosom. [56]) forgive! [57]) appear. [58]) foggy. [59]) mistake. [60]) creating. [61]) why? [62]) veins, also oars ($\frac{1}{2}$). [63]) flame. [64]) be born. [65]) degree of latitude. [66]) florid. [67]) grapes. [68]) fragrant.

Gang været baade en Sydbo og en Russer, jeg havde da ikke frusset mellem Isklumper og Snedynger[69]) ved den finske Bugt.[70]) Dog hvortil dètte? Låndskabsmaleren kan vel elske det pittorèske, det hènrykkende i fremmedè Landes Natúrskönheder, og mindes det med vemódig Længsel, naar han ej mere har det for Öje, men Mènnesket maa finde sig i[71]) Skæbnens Tilskikkelser[72]) med Taalmódighed, og virke[73]) i den Kréds,[74]) hvor Himlen har hènsat[75]) ham. Unyttigt[76]) er det at spilde Tíden med tomme Klágèr;[77]) dèrfor vil jeg ikke plåge[78]) mig med Bekymringer[79]) över de svundne Dáge, ej heller grùble över[80]) min Frèmtids Skæbne, men nýde Öjeblikkets élskelige Lyst med Taknèmmelighed.[81]) Ja, dejlige[82]) Itálien, du èr en Bålsom[83]) for mit saarede[84]) Hjærte, du stiller[85]) de Kváler, hvormèd den falske Natálias Tróløshed[86]) sönderrev[87]) min Sjæl. Smèrtelige[88]) Minde[89]) om en fordærvelig[90]) Lidenskab, víg for Natúrens trösterige[91]) Skönhed. Ha! yndige, falske Slange,[92]) hvorlédes kunde du saa letsindig[93]) forglemme min Kærlighed, og lönne min várme Tróskab med Meenéd?[94]) I lange Aar tilbad jeg dig, lindrede[95]) din Fáders sörgelige Stilling, og forskåffede[96]) dig ved hans Död et vènligt Lý[97]) under mine kære Forældres[98]) gæstfri[99]) Tág. Og saaledes gjèngjælder du mig! — O, Taknèmmelighed! var du da aldrig Kærligheds Móder? — Ak, nej! Kærlighed er Himlens Datter, og födes ej af jórdiske Drifter.[100]) Den

---

[69]) lumps, masses of ice & heaps of snow. [70]) the gulf of Finland. [71]) put up with, bear. [72]) decrees of fate. [73]) act ($\frac{1}{1}$). [74]) circle, cycle, sphere. [75]) placed. [76]) useless. [77]) empty complaints. [78]) torment. [79]) griefs, (plur. $\frac{2}{3}$). [80]) muse upon. [81]) gratitude. [82]) fair. [83]) balm. [84]) wounded. [85]) soothest. [86]) faithlessness. [87]) tore to pieces, broke. [88]) sore, doleful. [89]) remembrance. [90]) pernicious. [91]) rich in comfort. [92]) snake, viper. [93]) fickly, inconsiderâtely. [94]) perjury. [95]) alleviated. [96]) furnished, afforded ($\frac{1}{1}$). [97]) shelter. [98]) parents. [99]) hospitable. [100]) instincts.

er frí som Luften paa Bjergene, og flygter for Lænker [1]) og Tvang. [2]) Ja! jeg föler det. Natália svór mig Tróskab af Taknèmmelighed, og dèrfor hævnede den fornærmede [3]) Natúr sig paa hende, da Ivan smeltede den falskes Bryst. Dog hvorfòr hykle [4]) Fölelser, hun ikke nærede! Min grændselöse [5]) Hengívenhed, min prövede [6]) Tróskab blév til Latter, [7]) da hun i Ivans Árme drév Gjèk med [8]) Tró og Love. [9]) O, Natália, vildt kastede du dig i hans Favn! [10]) er du da lykkelig ved hans Side? Er du det virkelig? Elsker han dig da? —

En Taare stód i Fédors Öje, da han mindedes sin Ungdoms Kærlighed, men snárt fattede han sig, [11]) gréb [12]) sin Crayon, og tegnede atter. [13]) "Ak! tænkte han, hvi ànklager [14]) jeg da hende? Kan en Mármorstötte [15]) besjæles af Lídenskab, en Ístap [16]) glöde af brændende Fölelse? — Nej, nej! jo mére [17]) jeg óvertænker dette usálige [18]) Fòrhold, jo mere indseer jeg, at det ikke var Kærlighed, ihvorvèl [19]) det har forbitret mig min Ungdoms skönneste Dàge. Men bòrt [20]) med dette! Jeg òpgiver [21]) for évig enhvèr Fórdring [22]) paa den Lykke at elske og elskes igjèn, og glemmer mine Forvildelser. [23]) Kun [24]) i dit Tempel, Natúr! vil jeg knæle, og paa dit Alter, o helLige [25]) Kunst, ofrer jeg frívillig [26]) mit Hjærtes Fölelser. Jeg er nu fem og týve Aar gammel, det er nú paa Tíden [27]) at blive klòg. [28])

Saaledes filosoférede Kunstneren en rùm Tid, [29]) og àrbejdede derhos flittigen. Men da han var lidt údmat-

---

[1]) chains (½). [2]) constraint. [3]) injured, offended. [4]) feign. [5]) unbounded. [6]) tried. [7]) was turned to ridicule. [8]) sported with. [9]) faith and promise, *Love*, is derived from the Germ. *Glaube*, belief, trust. [10]) fathom, embrace. [11]) recovered himself. [12]) took up. [13]) sketched on (again). [14]) complain of. [15]) marblestatue. [16]) icicle. [17]) the more. [18]) unhappy. [19]) although. [20]) away. [21]) renounce. [22]) claim. [23]) errors. [24]) only. [25]) sacred. [26]) voluntarily. [27]) high time. [28]) wise. [29]) a long while, they say also, but it is a Germanism, *en Tid lang*.

tet[30]) af den forrige[31]) Dags Arbejde, og nu desúden saa tídlig havde forlådt sit Leje, saa begyndte han at blive sövnig. Han satte sig derfor mere mágelig[32]) paa Bænken, lænede Ryggen[33]) mod Træets tykke Stamme, og lagde sin Tègnebog paa Sködet. Det várede[34]) ikke længe, förend han begyndte at nikke[35]) med Hóvedet, og snárt faldt han i en dýb vederkvægende Slummer, hvorved hans Tègnebog gléd néd paa Jórden, og blév liggende òpslagen[36]) med en Skidse af den hålvrunde Plads, paa hvilken han sad. I Förstningen[37]) slumrede han rólig;[38]) men efterhaånden[39]) begyndte hans Fantasí at tumle sig[40]) i mångehaande sèlsomme[41]) Fòrestillinger og Billeder, der omsíder òrdnede sig[42]) til en mærkelig Dröm, som vi hermed ville mèddele[43]) vore Læsere.

Det fòrekom ham, som om[44]) uforudsete Omstændigheder nödte ham til plúdselig, at maatte forláde Italien, og vende tilbáge til sit Hjèm. Med Rånselen[45]) paa Ryggen og en Vándringsstav i Haanden, stód han med eet[46]) foran en méget lang Bro,[47]) paa hvilken der bevægede sig mange Túsende Mennesker i det daglige Livs Sysler.[48]) Under den var det grændselöse[49]) Hav yderst[50]) klárt og gjènnemsigtigt,[51]) paa hvis Bund det lígeledes vrimlede af[52]) utállige Mennesker, der vògtede[53]) deres Forrètninger, ligesaa frít og úhindret som Vandrerne paa Bróen. Op af Bölgernes Overflade hævede sig et blændende hvidt Skelèt med glimrende Vinger og en gylden Lé.[54]) I dets Aasyn,[55]) skönt kun en Knókkelbygning,[56]) laa Mildhed og Frèd.[57]) Fédor stùdsede[58]) ved

---

[30]) wearied. [31]) preceding. [32]) commodiously. [33]) back. [34]) lasted, was. [35]) nod. [36]) open. [37]) the beginning. [38]) quietly, softly. [39]) by little and little. [40]) ramble, rove. [41]) wonderful. [42]) arranged themselves. [43]) communicate to. [44]) as if. [45]) wallet. [46]) at once. [47]) bridge. [48]) occupations. [49]) boundless. [50]) exceedingly. [51]) transparent. [52]) swarmed with. [53]) attended to. [54]) scythe. [55]) countenance. [56]) structure of bones. [57]) peace. [58]) started at.

disse Sýner,[59]) og tænkte: „Dette er ikke den lille Vindebro, som förer til min Fáders Landsted,[60]) og dóg syntes mig för, at jeg saae Húset selv og Háven, som ómgiver det. I det han ánstillede disse Betrágtninger tilhviskede et ubekjéndt Væsen ham:[61]) „Dette er Vérdensbroen, som förer til Fuldkómmenhedens Bórg.[62]) Du er Livets Génius og Skelèttet med den gyldne Lé er Dödens Génius.

Ved Lýden af disse Ord förekom det Fédor, at han forándredes[63]) i sit héle Væsen. Hans sædvánlige jórdiske Drágt[64]) sank néd, og han indhylledes[65]) i et straalende hvidt Klædebon.[66]) Der voxte hyíde Vinger frem[67]) af hans Skúldre, og hans héle Légeme lútredes[68]) af ætérisk Ild. Han gjénnemskuede med Klárhed héle Jórdlivets Færd, og fölte sig i en uéndelig[69]) Grád óphöjet óver det ménneskelige Kön. Han saae sig omkring med ædel óphöjet Anstand,[71]) og Vandrerne paa Bróen betrágtede ham med Ærbödighed[71]) og Frygt. Skelettet saae smilende op til ham, og sagde: „Vær[72]) mig vélkommen min Bróder, og únddrag mig ikke[73]) mine Offere.“[74]) „Nei, svárede Fédor, Livets Fyrste kjender ingen Uretfærdighed.[75]) De svåge Dödelige elske mig og háde dig, og dóg[76]) léve de hos dig som hos mig.“ Med disse Ord vinkede[77]) han ad en Mand, som gik ham forbi. Denne nærmede sig skjælvende, men Fédor gréb ham med overnatúrlig Kraft, og slyngede ham úd i Bölgerne. Gaa! sagde han, du er móden[78]) til Döden. Forsvind af Livet, og gjör Plads for andre! Den ulyksálige sank med

---

[59]) visions ($\frac{2}{3}$), but *Syne* without plur. is appearance, show. [60]) country-seat. [61]) *tilhv. ham*, whispered to him (p. 72). [62]) the castle of perfection. [63]) was changed, transformed. [64]) clothing. [65]) was covered. [66]) garment. [67]) *voxte frem*, grew forth, shot forth. [68]) was purified. [69]) infinite. [70]) dignity. [71]) veneration. [72]) be! (p. 40). [73]) do not withdraw. [74]) victims. [75]) injustice. [76]) nevertheless. [77]) beckoned. [78]) ripe.

et Skrig néd i de klare Vande, men da Döden berörte ham sagte[79]) med sin Lé, bevægede han sig med fornyet Munterhed og Kraft paa Hávets Bund. Skelettet takkede Fédor med et venligt Nik, og sank derpaa néd i Bölgerne. Livets Génius skréd vídere frem[80]) paa Bróen, og bragde sin Bróder Döden mangt et Offer. Omsíder da Fédor var nær ved den módsatte Kyst, nærmede sig en dejlig Pige, som lignede hans fördums elskede Natália, og hviskede til ham: „Her er Fuldkòmmenhedens Börg paa denne Klippetinde.[81]) Jeg förer[82]) dig derhen." Fédor beträgtede hende stúdsende[83]) og sagde: „Du èr dòg Natália, og stóler paa[84]) min jórdiske Svághed. Men jeg siger dig for förste og sídste Gang; misbrug àldrig mit Vènskab, ti èllers blíver[85]) du straffet.[86]) Foran dem laa Borgen paa et trúende Fjeld,[87]) og Vejen derhen gik imèllem Tórne og Krát ved Siden af umaalelige Afgrunde.[88]) Da gréb[89]) Natália en mödende Vandrer, og kastede ham fra Klippetinden néd i Bjergets dýbeste Klófter.[90]) Gýsende[91]) bemærkede[92]) Fédor dette, og údbröd[93]) i dýb Bevægelse: „Det er forbi. Dit jórdiske Liv er endt! Nú kommer Dödens Génius op af denne Brönd,[94]) og förer dig bort." I det han frèmförte[95]) disse Ord, stóde de begge i en mörk Hvælving[96]) i Borgen ved Síden af en úhyre[97]) dýb Brönd. Op af dens Svælg stég Döden, og tóg Natália ved Haanden, for at léde hende derhèn; men den fortvivlede[98]) Píge òmslyngede[99]) Fédor med Hæftighed, og bad om Skaansel.[100]) Da svárede denne med Taarer: „Jeg kan ikke redde[1]) dig! jeg maa selv en Gang nédstige[2]) i Brönden, naar Himlens Herre[3])

---

[79]) softly, gently. [80]) advanced farther. [81]) summit of the rock. [82]) I will bring, lead. [83]) amazed. [84]) trust to. [85]) shall be. [86]) punished. [87]) mountain. [88]) abysses. [89]) seized. [90]) clefts. [91]) shuddering. [92]) perceived. [93]) broke forth, cried out. [94]) well. [95]) spoke. [96]) vault. [97]) excessively, terribly. [98]) desperate. [99]) wound herself about, cleaved to. [100]) indulgence, mercy. [1]) save. [2]) descend. [3]) the lord of heaven.

ómvælter [4]) denne Tingenes Orden." Med disse Ord slap [5]) Fédor den trösteslöse [6]) Mö, [7]) og Döden styrtede [8]) hende néd i Brönden. Jämmertóner [9]) löde fra det rædsomme[10]) Dyb. Nú vendte Fédor sig til Döden, og sagde: Min Bróder! ógsaa jèg maa en Gang[11]) nédstige i dit Rige. Módtag mig da vènligen. Mit Hjærte trænger til[12]) Kærlighed. Da saae Döden med et himmelsk[13]) Smil paa ham, og trykte hans Haand med uèndelig Várme mód[14]) sit Bryst. „Döden er Livet", sagde han, „I mit Rige bevæger Stövet[15]) sig som i dit; dit er en evig Omvexling[16]) af Tingene, og alt dette er kun Fórberedelse.[17]) Vi tó víde íntet. Over[18]) os ère der uèndelige Gráder af fúldkomne Aander. Men vi ère Venner." Ved disse Ord forándrede Skelettets héle Údvortes sig; dets Aasyn straalede[19]) i en uforkrænkelig[20]) Glórie,[21]) og dets héle Skábning[22]) ántog[23]) saa skönne og ædle Former, som det dödelige Öje aldrig skúer. Det hèrligste meest fúldendte[24]) Væsen, med Salighedens[25]) réneste Údtryk i sine Míner,[26]) stód for Fédor, som fölte sig betáget[27]) af unævnelig héllig Frýd. Den skönne forædlede Génius sank til sin Bróders Hjærte, og en Ánelse[28]) af den himmelske Reenhed[29]) faldt i Fédors Sjæl. Han vilde tåle, men Læben nægtede[30]) ham sin Tiéneste. Hans Hjærte mægtede ikke[31]) at bære denne óverjordiske Sálighed, og han — — — vaagnede.[32])

---

[4]) destroyes. [5]) let loose, let go. [6]) inconsolable. [7]) maid. [8]) precipitated, hurled. [9]) tones of lamentation. [10]) dreadful. [11]) one day, at last. [12]) stands in need of. [13]) celestial, heavenly. [14]) to. [15]) the dust, mankind. [16]) transmutation. [17]) preparation. [18]) above. [19]) beamed. [20]) incorruptible, imperishable. [21]) radiance. [22]) shape, person. [23]) assumed. [24]) finished, perfect. [25]) beatitude. [26]) countenance. [27]) seized, stunned. [28]) perception, idea. [29]) purity. [30]) denied. [31]) was unable. [32]) awoke.

KONG VALDEMARS DATTER OG ALKORS SÖN.

Et Æventyr af Nyerups *Idunna* for 1812.

Der vår en Konning [1]) ved Öster-Strand, [2])
Kong Våldemar hédte [3]) den bólde, [4])
han raadte [5]) ej over Riger og Land,
og éj over grönne Vólde; [6])
han aate [7]) en Borg saa brat [8]) og fast,
og dértil vel tusinde Snækker [9])
med Silkesejl og forgylden Mast:
saa víde hans Vælde [10]) sig strækker. [11])

Om Vinteren sad han paa bratten Borg
alt [12]) med sine Kæmper [13]) tilsammen; [14])
da drukke de Mjöden forúden Sorg,
og Vínen den kláre med Gammen.
Naar Sólen skinned' i grönnen Vang [16])
og Gjögen [17]) mon gale [18]) i Lunde, [19])
da hejsed [20]) han Sejl med Spil [21]) og med Sang,
at gæste [22]) de bretlandske [23]) Sunde. [24])
Om Hösten, [25]) naar Voven ej mere var huld, [26])
og Stormen begyndte at bjælde, [27])

---

[1]) poet. for *Konge*, king. [2]) for *Östersö-en*, the Baltic. [3]) for *hed*, p. 46. [4]) the brave, gallant (bold). [5]) reigned. [6]) poet. or Norwegian for *Mark*, field. Swed. *vall*, Icel. *völlr*. [7]) an old poet. form for *ejede* possessed. [It is the past tense *átti* of the Icelandic verb *eiga*, to possess. ED]. [8]) steep [it means lofty, beetling. ED.]. [9]) vessels. [10]) power. [11]) extends. [12]) all, a poet. expletive. [13]) champions. [14]) together, an old Germanism. [15]) mirth, joy. [16]) field. [17]) the cuckoo. [18]) did crow, sing. [19]) groves, woods. [20]) hoisted. [21]) play, music. [22]) visit. [23]) British. [24]) sounds, strath. [25]) harvest, autumn. [26]) favorable. [27]) howl.

da dróg han tilbáge med Sölv og med Guld,
med kòstelig Vin og med Trælle.
Han var saa saare[28]) rig paa Guld,
paa Tærner[29]) og favre Svende,[30])
men al sin Klenód[31]) han agted som Mùld
mod Hilda hans Datter hin vænne.[32])
Hende gilled[33]) saa mangen Ridder skön,
de dróge saa vide Vèje,
men hun havde kaaret[34]) Prins Rerik i Lön,[35])
ham maatte hun ikke éje.
Hans Fader var Alkor, den Stólkonge[36]) gram;
af Hjærtet Kong Valdemar hadede ham.
De våre Fostbrödre[37]) i Ungdommens Vaar;[38])
de bléve saa fjendske[39]) i Manddommens Aar.
Naar Valdemar drog paa Leding[40]) úd,
blev hundrede Kæmper tilbage,
som skulde forsvare den Mö[41]) saa prúd,[42])
og tage paa hende vel Vare.[43])
Da tórde[44]) hun aldrig af Buret[45]) gaa,
dog blev hende Tiden ej lang:
hun dansed med sine Tærner smaa,
hun slog Guldharpen og sang;
saa sömmede[46]) hun med röden Guld,
og naar hendes Finger var vund,[47])
saa légte[48]) hnn med sin liden Hund,
smaa Issegrim var baade væn og huld.
Naar Solen gik ned bag Skovens Top,
da trén hun saa tit i Höjenloft op,

---

[28]) so very. [29]) hand-maids, girls. [30]) fine lads. [31]) treasure, a Germanism for *Klenodie*. [32]) fair. [33]) approved, courted. [34]) chosen. [35]) privately, secretly. [36]) literally: *throne-king* i. e. great king. [37]) sworn friends. [38]) spring. [39]) hostile. [40]) naval expedition. [41]) maid. [42]) fine, elegant, excellent. [43]) *tage Vare paa*, attend, take care of. [44]) durst (p. 43). [45]) cage; small, separate dwellinghouse; a lady's bower. [46]) sowed, stitched. [47]) wounded (by the needle). [48]) played.

og saae hen ud over hviden Strand,[49])
hvor Havfruen[50]) légte i kláren Vand.
Da saae hun og tit til de gamle Linde,[51])
hvorunder hun légte med Rerik saa fró,
alt förend de Fædre blev fjendske i Sinde,
alt förend Prins Rerik i Leding uddróg.
Da kvad hun: „Prins Rerik! hvor est[52]) du min Ven?
hvor svæver du nu paa Bölgen blaa?
Sju[53]) lange Vintre er rundne hen,
siden dig mit Öje saae.
Ak! har du forgæt[54]) din Barndoms[55]) Mö,
da[56]) Hilda af Kummer og Sorrig maa dö."
En Kvæld[57]) som i Höjenloft hun sad,
og saae, hvor de Havfruer légte saa glad,
og hörte hvor Aftenens Vinde
mon suse igjennem de Linde.
Fra Lindenes mörke Kroner[58]) klang[59])
saa yndelig[60]) saadan en Harpesang:
„Jeg réd saa vide om Bjerg og Sö,
gjennem mörken Skov og dybe Dale,
men ingensteds fandt jeg den vænne Mö,
der kunde mit Hjærte husvale.[61])
Ak! Elskov klemmer[62]) saa saare;
Naar Snækken gled over Bölgen blaa,
klang Vovernes Pladsken som Hildas Sange;
naar Gangeren traved[63]) over Heden graa,
löd Gangerens Fódslag som Harpens Strenge,
som Hilda slóg under Linden.

---

[49]) sea or seashore. [50]) the mermaid. [51]) limetrees. [52]) art, poet. for *er*. [53]) seven, poet. for *syv*. [54]) forgot, an archaism for *forgættet*, poet. for *forglemt*. [55]) of thy childhood. [56]) then. [57]) night, late evening. [58]) crowns, tops. [59]) sounded. [60]) graceful, charming. [61]) comfort. [62]) presses, wrings. [63]) trotted, for *travede* (¶) thus in the following *e* is frequently omitted in similar cases.

Jeg Hildas Billed' i Skyen saae,
naar Öjet til Himlen jeg hæved,
og stirred jeg dybt ned i Havets Blaa,
hendes Billed imöde mig svæved,
ti Elskov klemmer saa saare!
Hvor est du, Hilda! o lyt[64]) til min Sang,
og il til mit bankende Hjærte!
i Bárndommens Vaar ved Harpens Klang
du selv jo at elske mig lærte,[65])
naar Harpen du slóg under Linden,
Ak! Elskov klemmer saa saare!"
Nu tav den tonende Harpe brat,[66])
Og Hilda lyttede længe;
men ingen Tóne i mörke Nat
klang mere fra Harpens Strenge.
Kun Vinden sused i Lindens Grene,
og Bölgen pladsked mod Strandens Stene.
Da gréb hun Harpen og sågte rörte
de gyldne Strenge, og Vinden förte
igjennem Mörket de svåge Tóner
hen til de gamle Lindekroner:
„I énsomt Búr, en Dúe[67]) lig,
maa Hilda kvæde sörgelig;[68])
knap[69]) tör hun Harpens Strenge röre,
at ej de Tærner deres Klang skal höre;
knap tör hun nynne saa sagtelig:
min Hjærtens Ven! jeg elsker dig.
Ak! Elskov klemmer saa saare."
Nu sidder Hilda hver Kvæld saa glad,
mens Rerik kvæder i Lunden;
skönt tykke Mure dem skiller ad,
de have dog Sorgen forvunden.[70])

---

[64]) the imperative from *jeg lytter*, I hearken, listen. [65]) taughtst. [66]) suddenly. [67]) dove, pigeon. [68]) melancholy. [69]) scarcely, otherwise *næppe*. [70]) repaired, forgot.

Men hör mig, skön Jomfru, og mærk derpaa [71])
Til Gammen [72]) til Sorg sig mon [73]) vende,
naar Sólen som klárest [74]) paa Himlen mon staa,
da kommer Uvejret [75]) behænde. [76])
Det lakked nu alt ad [77]) Höstens Tid,
og Vinden fra Vesten mon stande, [78])
de Vikinger [79]) ile fra Bretland hid
alt over de skummende [80]) Vande,
paa Voven danse de Snekker blaa,
i Skoven hvirvle de Blade smaa.
Det stormer saa hardt over Vesterhav, [81])
de Bölger styrte som Bjerge mod Stranden.
„Ak! fandt du, kær Fader, i Bölgen din Grav,
da dör din Hilda, jeg siger for Sanden,
mit Hjærte da brister [82]) af Sorgen."
Det tórdner [83]) i Vesten, det lýner [84]) saa brat [85])
den Taarnevægter [86]) blæser [87]) om mörken Nat,
det runger [88]) saa höjt udi Borgen;
fra Stranden höres som Vaabengny, [89])
de Kæmper raabe i vilden Sky;
da kiger [90]) Maanen saa listelig [91])
bag Skyen frem over hviden Bölge.
Det er Kong Váldemar gæv [92]) og rig,
fra Brètlands Tòg [93]) med ált sit Fölge; [94])
det er Kong Valdemar stòlt og prud
alt med sine tusinde Snækker.

---

[71]) attend to it, think on. [72]) joy, mirth. [73]) will, may. [74]) at the clearest, brightest. [75]) bad weather, storm. [76]) nimbly, hastily. [77]) literally: it now already approached to. [78]) poet. for *staa*, stand. [79]) sea-champions, sea-heroes. [80]) foaming. [81]) the North-sea, or German ocean. [82]) will burst (§ 1 p. 49). [83]) thunders, [84]) lightens. [85]) frequently. [86]) tower-watchman. [87]) blows (his horn). [88]) resounds. [89]) noise of arms. [90]) peeps. [91]) roguishly, slyly. [92]) excellent. [93]) from (his) expedition to Britain. [94]) retinue.

Skön Hilda seer fra Höjenloft ud;
de Silkesejl Stranden bedækker:[95])
"Nu Krist være lovet i Himmerig!
kær Fader! jeg snart kan favne dig."

De Kæmper sidde ved breden Bord,
de drikke baade Öl og Mjöd;
de vexle[96]) saa mangt et skjemtsomt[97]) Ord,
ti Vinen den småger saa söd.

I Höjsædet[98]) sidder den Konning god,
ved Siden skön Hilda det Rosenblod.[99])
I Hallen triner en Ridder ind,[100])
var klædt i Maar [1]) og Skarlagenskind. [2])

Först hilser [3]) han den Konning god,
saa hilser han Hilda det Rosenblod.
„Hil [4]) være eder, Kong Valdemar bold!
Kong Alkor la'r [5]) eder hilse;

I [6]) stréde [7]) saa ofte med Avindsskjold [8])
eder begge til liden Frelse; [9])
nu er til Forlig[10]) han og Venskab beréd,
han býder eder saa tryg[11]) en Fred,

om I ham vil víde[12]) en Bön.
I haver en Datter, saa væn[13]) en Mö
der findes vel næppe paa Verdens Ö,
hende fæste[14]) I Rerik, Kong Alkors Sön."

„Nej!" skrèg Kong Valdemar, var saa gram,[15])
„ret aldrig min Datter skal fæste ham!

---

[95]) cover. [96]) interchange. [97]) sportful. [98]) on the throne. [99]) *Blod*, blood, stands poetically for *creature*, maiden. [100]) *triner ind*, enters, (⅔ p. 50). [1]) marten (-skin). [2]) *Skind*, skin, is here put poetically for cloak furred with skin. [3]) greets, salutes. [4]) hail. [5]) for *lader*, lets (you greet, i. e. sends you greeting). [6]) you (both). [7]) fought (⅔ p. 50). [8]) shield or arms of envy, i. e. rancour. [9]) salvation, benefit, gain. [10]) reconciliation. [11]) safe, secure (p. 27). [12]) grant, a poet. expression Icel. *veita*. [13]) so fine, equally fine. [14]) betroth, optative (¼). [15]) (he) was so (very) angry or hateful.

ret aldrig min Datter en Nidding [16]) skal faa.
En Nidding er Alkor, hans Sön deslige: [17])
för skal hun som Mö udi Kloster gaa
og fæste sig Brúdgom i Himmerige."
Den Ridder ham svarer sömmelig: [18])
„Herre Konning! du ikke forivre Dig!" [19])
han vidste at föje [20]) sin Tale saa godt,
„Kong Alkor er Rysalands mægtige Drot, [21])
Prins Rerik en Ridder med Ære:
hvad han faar ej med Gode, han tager med Magt.
Ej Niddinger monne de være."
„Spar [22]) du dine Ord, Ridder Uselig, [23])
hvis mit Sværd ej Munden skal stoppe [24]) dig."
Ud ganger [25]) den Ridder saa skyndelig, [26])
det var ej ret sikkert at dvæle;
men Hilda sidder saa blég som et Líg,
for Sorrig hun kunde ei mæle [27]).
Nu líder det [28]) Maaneder fíre og fem,
de Húskarle drikke og kvæde;
men Hilda saa saare mon græde. [29])
Nu líder det alt til Vaaren frem:
höjt Solen skinner paa klaren Vove,
og Gjögen galer i grönne Skove;
de Huskarle stunde til [30]) Ledingsfærd,
skön Hilda sig önsker i sorten Jord.
Men Valdemar pönser [31]) saa mangelund, [32])
han frygter for Alkors lumske Fund, [33])

---

[16]) a scoundrel. [Nidding. Icel. *niðingr* is not a plain scoundrel but a mean recreant, a vile traitor. Where the Icelandic *sagas* say *"hvers manns niðingr"*, the Italian poets use the expression *falsissimo traditore*, false traitor. ED.] [17]) also. [18]) decently. courteously. [19]) do not get into passion, optat ($\frac{1}{1}$). [20]) manage, dispose ($\frac{1}{1}$). [21]) lord, poet. [22]) spare, forbear. [23]) Sir Pitiful. [24]) stop, (bung the mouth, i. e. silence). [25]) goes, poet for *gaar*. [26]) hastily. [27]) speak. [28]) it goes i. e. there pass. [29]) did weep. [30]) think on, prepare. [31]) muses, meditates. [32]) many ways, poet. [33]) cunning devices.

han kalder nu for sig de Húskarle sju,
de bedste i Gaarden [34]) mon være.
„I sværge en Ed, I sværge mig nu
ved Krist og hans Móder kære;
I være mig tro, I tíe kvær, [35])
I síge ej frá, hvad jeg býder jer.
I fölge mig nu med Öxe hver [36])
og hver med sin bréde Hakke [37])
til Mörkveds Skov; naar vi komme dèr,
saa ville vi vídere snakke."
Og dèr de kòm til Mörkveds Skov,
begyndte de flúgs [38]) at grave; [39])
en Hule [40]) saa dyb i Jorden de grov,
en Stúe [41]) saa [42]) vilde de lave: [43])
foroven bedækket med Stén [44]) og Muld,
forinden behængt med Sölv og med Guld,
Díd bragde Kong Valdemar alt sit Klenód,
baade Guld og kòstbare Vare,
og dèrtil alskòns [45]) Fetalje [46]) god,
baade Mjöd og Vinen klare.
Saa ledte [47]) han díd kær Datter sín
med hendes Tærner trende.
„Jeg haver berédt en Stúe fín
med Sölv og med Guld behænde, [48])
den er saa köl [49]) mod Solens Brand:
der vælder [50]) en Kilde [51]) af hviden Sand,
som Perlen rén er dens klare Vand.

---

[34]) the house. [35]) *tie*, be silent, optat. (§ p. 45), *kvær*, poet. adverb, still, silently, i. e. preserve the secret religiously. [36]) each. [37]) mattock. [38]) immediately. [39]) dig (§ p. 47). [40]) cavern. [41]) room. [42]) an expletive particle. [43]) prepare, make. [44]) stones (p. 25). [45]) of every kind, i. e. divers. [46]) victuals [a low German corruption of the Latin word victualia. ED.] [47]) lead, conducted. [48]) dexterously, artificially. [49]) cool, a Germanism for *kölig*. [50]) springs forth. [51]) fountain.

I dvæle nu hèr vel Maaneder fem,
mens jeg paa Bölgen maa svæve,[52])
til Hösten[53]) komme vi glade hjem
i Lyst og Gammen at leve."

„Dernéde den sórte Grav jeg seer,
kær Fader! jeg siger for Sanden:
kommer jeg dernéd, ret[54]) aldrig mér
vi glade skúe hinanden.

„Stig ned, stig ned, min Datter kær!
det er saa lystigt at léve dèr.
Trindtòm i Bögens[55]) Sále[56])
saa liflig[57]) synge de Nattergále.[58])
Stig néd, stig néd, min Datter kær!
der er saa hèrligt at léve.
For Hulder[59]) og Höjbo[60]) du frygte ej[61]) dèr,
vi Kors[62]) i Dörstòlperne[63]) skréve.
Du bède en Bön[64]) hver Morgenstund,
hver Aften du ganger til Hvíle,
saa vogte[65]) Smaaèngle om din Blund,[66])
og bær' dig paa Ármene síne."

„Farvel da, kær Fader! du seer mig ej mér!
det Löfte du maa mig dog give,
at sende mit Hjærte, naar död jeg èr,
til Rerik; hans var jeg i Líve,"

„Hold Mund,[67]) hold Mund, du lede Kvind,[68])
og pak dig[69]) nu strags i Hulen ind."
Nu dækked de Hulen med Kvist[70]) og med Grén,[71])
saa klagelig[72]) Hilda sig vinder;[73])

---

[52]) must ramble. [53]) at, in the harvest. [54]) surely, certainly. [55]) of the beech. [56]) saloons, halls. [57]) sweetly. [58]) nightingales. [59]) elfs. [60]) spectres, ghosts. liter. the inhabitant of the barrow. [confer Repp on "Hogmanaye" in the Archæologia Scotica. ED.] [61]) fear not, optat ($\frac{1}{1}$). [62]) crosses ($\frac{2}{2}$). [63]) the posts of the door. [64]) beg (say) a prayer. optat. [65]) guard. [66]) slumber. [67]) mouth, your tongue. [68]) you ugly (lewd) woman! [69]) get you gone. [70]) twig, i. e. twigs. [71]) branch, bough. [72]) mournfully. [73]) winds, wrings herself.

men Faderens Hjærte er haardt som Stén,
fast[74]) Kæmperne græde som Kvinder.
Hvi gjalder,[75]) saa höjt i vilden Sky
den Ludurblæst[76]) og Vaabengny?
Hvi bæve de Grane[77]) i Lunden?
Ak, hjælpe dig Gud, du Konning bold!
dit Guld og dit Sölv er i Fjendens Vold,[78])
Din Borg Konning Alkor har vunden;[79])
Dine Kæmper er saar,[80]) Dine Svende[81]) er död':
han[82]) sparer ej Barnet i Moderens Sköd,
for Du ham for Nidding udskældte.[83])
Prinds Rerik i Höjenloft selv mon gaae,
han söger skön Hilda i hver en Vraa,[84])
han vader i Blod til sit Bælte.
Da mælte Kong Valdemar gram i Hú:
„ej Rerik har vundet sit Spil endnú;
skön Hilda han aldrig skal finde."
Han axler[85]) saa brat sit Purpurskind,[86])
behænde sin Brynje[87]) mon binde;
han rider sin Ganger[88]) ad Borgeled[89]) ind:
„hil være dig Alkor, Fostbroderen min!
vel var det, jeg hèr dig kan finde,
nu ville vi slikke[90]) hinandens Blod."[91])
Da hůg[92]) han med baade[93]) Hænder;
men Sværdet brast i Stykker to;

---

74) although, a Sved. idiom for *skönt*. 75) sounds. 76) the trumpet-sound *Ludur*, or *Lu'r* or even *Lu*, is the name of a sort af antique horn or trumpet used in war. 77) the pines. 78) power. 79) a Germanism or archaism for *vundet*, won (p. 48). 80) wounded, an old adj. usually expressed by the partic. *saaret*. 81) young men. 82) he, the enemy, viz. King Alkor. 83) calledst, abusedst. 84) corner. 85) throws on his shoulder. 86) purplecloak. 87) cuirass. 88) charger. 89) the gate, poet. for *Pórt*. 90) lick. 91) alludes to the ancient custom in swearing one another intimate friendship (*Fostbrödrelag*). 92) struck (⅔ p. 47). 93) both, poet. for *begge*.

ham Alkor fra Sadelen render. [94])
„Nu ligger du alt paa din Bag
paa blöden [95]) Jord behænde, [96])
nu var det for mig en föje [97]) Sag,
dit uselig Liv at ende.
Men aldrig jeg dræber [98]) Fostbroder min,
fast du mig en Nidding mon kalde;
min Sön du fæste skön Datter din,
saa frier [99]) jeg dig Borgen med alle. [100])
Men Valdemar drog sin hvasse Kniv:
„da agter jeg ikke at spare dit Liv."
Han havde [1]) da vejet [2]) Kong Alkor brat,
jeg vil det sige for Sande;
men Tagstenen [3]) ned fra Taarnet drat, [4])
og Valdemar slog [5]) paa hans Pande. [6])
Da flygted [7]) Kong Valdemars Svende fús, [8])
men ingen af dem saae Dagens Ljús, [9])
som vidste, hvor Hilda mon blive. [10])
„Hvor est du, Prins Rerik! hvor est du, min Sön?
haver du skön Hilda funden?
Kong Valdemar haver alt fangen [11]) sin Lön;
og vi have Sejeren vunden."
„Gud hjælpe mig arme uselig Svend!
Jeg haver forlóret [12]) min Hjærtens Ven.
Jeg sögte med Lampe, jeg sögte med Blús, [13])
det var saa öde [14]) i Valdemars Hús,
jeg ingensteds min Fæstemö [15]) saae
og ingensteds hendes Tærner smaa.
Gud hjælpe mig arme uselig Svend!
jeg haver forloret min Hjærtens Ven.

---

[94]) runs, throws. [95]) the soft, a poet. form for *blöd* or *den blöde*. [96]) finely. [97]) small. [98]) shall kill. [99]) deliver. [100]) altogether. [1]) would, should have. [2]) killed, poet. [3]) the tile, a tile. [4]) dropt. [5]) hit. [6]) forehead. [7]) fled. [8]) readily, precipitately. [9]) light, poet. for *Lýs*. [10]) did stay. [11]) poet. for *faaet*, got. [12]) lost. [13]) flambeau, torch. [14]) waste, emdty. [15]) betrothed maid.

„Du sörge ej saa, kær Sönnen min!
Din Mö jeg dig bringer til Hænde;
jeg lader nedbryde hver Stok og Sten,
jeg lader det Tavlegulv[16]) vende."

Dé sögte i Dage, de sögte i fem,
men Hilda de fandt ej i alle dem.
Da kasted de Svende Fakler og Blús
i Höjenloft med stór Gammen.

De gyldne Flöje[17]) sank néd i Grús,
i vilden Sky brasked[18]) Flammen.
Saa brændte de Valdemars stolte Borg;
men Rerik havde stor Hjærtesorg.

„Hvad have I gjort? Ak, hjælp mig Krist!
den Lue saa sörgelig brager;
min Fæstemö have I brændt forvist.[19])
hör, hör, hvor det ynkelig[20]) klager!"[21])

Da blev Kong Rerik saa vild i Hú;
i Ilden da vilde han springe.
Det var stor Jammer, det var stor Gru[22])
at see, hvor ham Sorgen mon tvinge.

Hans Svende ham bandt med Silkesnór,[23])
de bandt ham de Hænder hvide.
Sex Dage og Nætter han mælte ej Ord,
hans Fader til megen Kvide.[24])

Den syvende Morgen, da Sól opstód,
gik Rerik ind for sin Fader gód
han var saa vee[25]) tilmode:
„I give mig Kaabe, I give mig Stav!
saa ganger jeg til den hellige Grav,
alt for mine Synder at böde."[26])

Den gamle Konning da blev saa mód,[27])
han græd saa bitter en Taare:

---

[16]) checkered floor. [or tesselated pavelment. ED.] [17]) weather-cocks. [18]) bragged, showed itself, arose. [19]) surely. [20]) wofully. [21]) laments. [22]) horror. [23]) silkcord. [24]) anguish, sorrow. [25]) woeful. [26]) repent. [27]) weary, sorry.

„Du altid varst[28]) mig en Sön saa god,
nu lægger du mig paa Baare.[29])
Hvad hjælper mig Sölv og röde Guld?
hvad hjælper mig Lande og Borge?
en bárnlös Fader i sórten Muld
jeg ganger med bitre Sorge.
Blív hèr, min Sön! udi Rysaland,
her tríves saa favre Kvinder;
selv rider jeg ud, jeg siger for Sand,
den vænneste Mö jeg dig vinder."
„Ak Fader! her er ingen Gammen mér,
paa Jorden er mörkt kun og öde,
I Himmelens Rige, hvor Hilda hun èr,
der finder jeg Ró for mín Kvidé."
Da tog Prins Rerik den Stav i Haand,
han gik saa brat for Sorgen.
Da sukked Kong Alkor og opgav sin Aand,
der var stor Jammer paa Borgen.
Tre Aar han vanked[31]) víde om Land,
og fandt hverken Ró eller Líse;[32])
da saae han i Drömme en gammel Mand,
han ligned Kong Alkor tilvisse.
„Vend òm, vend òm, du Ridder bòld!
hvi spilder[33]) du Tiden saa ilde?
dit Rige er i dine Svendes Vòld,
de raade,[34]) alt som de ville.
Din Fader er lagt i sorten Muld;
men Hilda hun er dig tro og hùld.
Vend om, vend om saa skyndelig,
men mærk[35]) det Ord, jeg siger dig:

---

[28]) poet. for *var*. [29]) the bier. [30]) thrive, grow up. [31]) strayed, rambled. [32]) relief, comfort. [33]) losest. [34]) rule, act. [35]) attend to.

den Jomfru, du möder paa Höjenlofts Bro,[36])
hende skal du kaare[37]) og give din Tro,
men Hilda skal komme fra Graven brat,
og sove saa södt i din Arm hver Nat."
„Saa Hilda er död!" raabte Rerik brat,
Då vaagnede han i den mörke Nat.

Grév Hildebrand sidder paa Alkors Borg,
der er stór Frýd og Gammen:
„Prins Rerik er död af Hjærtens Sorg,
„nu ville vi glædes tilsammen.
„I Dág, stolt Målfred! vort Bryllup[38]) skal staa
„nu Mjöden hin klare ej spares maa."

Ved Bórgeled[39]) hviler en Pillegrim sig,
vel indsvöbt[40]) udi sin Hætte;[41])
han er baade gammel og uselig,
knap Foden fra Jórden kan lette.
„Kom ind, kom ind du Pillegrimsmand!
„nu skalt[42]) du den Mjöd med os drikke!
„Grev Hildebrand fæster sin Liljevand,[43])
„paa Gammen her skórter det ikke."[44])

Men Malfred ham möder paa Höjelofts Bro,
hun er saa blég om Kinde;
da Gubbens[45]) Ord sig til Minde han drog;[46])
han her sin Brud skulde finde.

I Höjensal træder den Pillegrim ind,
han blev saa vee tilmode,[47])
her stande Kong Alkors gæve Mænd,
her stande de Staldbrödre gode;

---

[36]) an old and obscure expression, liter. *the bridge of the high loft,* or *upper story*, perhaps *the stairs* are meant. [37]) choose. [38]) wedding. [39]) an old expression for *Pórten,* the gate. [40]) wrapt up. [41]) cowl. [42]) poet. for *skal,* shalt, by a coarse Germanism they write sometimes *skalst.* [43]) composed of *lily & wand,* otherwise *Vaand* (p. 25), an old circumlocution for a maiden. [44]) there is no lack. [45]) the old man's. [46]) he recollected. [47]) woeful in his mind.

i Höjsædet[48]) sidder Grev Hildebrand prud,
hvor Alkor för plejed at hvile;
ved Siden sidder hans unge Brúd,
saa sörgelig monne hun smile.
Den Pillegrim ydmyg til Grúen[49]) mon gaa,
i Krògen[50]) ved Asken han monne staa.
Det Hórn[51]) gik rundt med Öl og med Mjöd,
de Kæmper det drabelig[52]) tömte;[53])
da tog den Greve Guldkronen röd,
alt som sig en Konning det sömte:[54])
I fylde mig Hórnet til överste Rand,
det er til Prins Reriks Minde.
Det er tre Aar,[55]) han dróg ud af Land,
den hellige Grav at finde,
da sagde han: „Hildebrand, Frænde kær!
„hvis inden den tredie Sommer
„I finde mig ej i Höjeloft her,
„der aldrig tilbage jeg kommer,
„da ligger jeg blég i sórten Muld:
„men I skal Guldkronen bære.
„I raade da for mit Sölv og mit Guld
„og for mine Kæmper kære.
„Ti sværger mig nu, I Alkors Mænd!
„medens Mjödehornet jeg drikker" — —
Da faldt Guldkrónen paa Jórden hen,
den brast vel i túsinde Stykker.
Fra Gruen rejste den Pillegrim sig,
de Krykker[56]) han kasted[57]) saa skyndelig,
han kasted den Kaabe og Hætte graa:
da stod han saa faver i Brynje blaa.
„Her seer du Prins Rerik, som du siger död!"
Men Hildebrand blev baade bleg og röd;

---

[48]) the throne. [49]) the hearth. [50]) the corner. [51]) drinking-horn. [52]) bravely. [53]) emptied. [54]) became. [55]) viz. *since*. [56]) crutches. [57]) threw, viz. *away*.

han greb saa brat til sit brede Sværd,
han vontes [58]) en sörgelig Brudefærd.
Men Rerik ham Sværdet af Haanden slóg,
og dybt sit Glavind [59]) i Hjærtet ham jóg. [60])

Prins Rerik nu op i Höjeloft trén:
„hvo sværger af eder at være min Mand?"
da svore de alle, de svore som én,
til Konning de Rerik da kaared paa Stand.

„I stander, stolt Malfred! saa blég og ræd,
„I frygte [61]) ej for min Vrede;
„jeg gjör ej værgelös [62]) Mö Fortræd, [63])
„til Mildhed jeg flugs [64]) er rede.

„I gíve mig eders snehvide Haand,
„I mig eders Tro tilsige, [65])
„Skön Hilda er död den Liljevaand,
„vi ere hinanden vel lige."

„Naar Hilda ej lever paa grönnen Jord,
„og Hildebrand hviler paa Baare,
„saa giver jeg eder min Haand og mit Ord;
„jeg gilled ej Hildebrand saare."

Da blev der i Borgen et Vaabengny, [66])
de Fryderaab [67]) stége til höjen Sky.

I al den Stund skön Hilda hun sad
i Skovens den mörke Hule
som Mos og Grén monne skjule.
Jeg siger for sandt, han var ej glad.
Hun saae ej Dagens klare Ljús
og ej de Stjerner smaa;
der altid var mörkt i det Jættehús,
skönt Solen paa Himlen mon staa.

---

[58]) expected, a Norwegian expression for *vantede sig*. [59]) glaive. [60]) thrusted. [61]) do not fear! optat. [62]) defenceless. [63]) trouble, vexation. [64]) immediately. [65]) do promise, optat. [66]) here as a sign of consent and joy. [67]) shouts.

Paa Taget der var vel et Röghul[68]) gjórt,
men listelig[69]) skjult[70]) med en Helle,[71])
som tóg hende Ljusets Straale bort,
hun kunde ej Dagene tælle.[72])
„De Uger henrinde,
de Maaneder svinde:
de Ulve tude;[73])
det fryser saa haardt i Skoven derude.
Hvor est du, kær Fader?
Ak, vidste du, hvad jeg maa lide!"
„De Uger henrinde,
de Maaneder svinde:
i grönne Lunde[74])
hôjt galer Gögen ved Midsommers Stunde.
Hvor est du min Rerik?
Ak, vidste du, hvad jeg maa lide!"
Saa gik et Aar, saa gik vel tre
I Sorg og megen Kvide,
da döde hendes Tærner tre,
de Tærner döde af Hungers Nöd,
de lævnede[75]) hende den sidste Bid[76]) Bröd.
Skön Hilda sad ved de kolde Lig,[77])
hun kunde for Sorrig ej græde:
„Ak Herre Gud Fader i Himmerig!
„ak skjenk dem din evige Glæde!"
Men Hungeren hende saa saare drév,
hun glemte at sukke og bede;[78])
sin liden Hund hun sönderrév,
den vilde hun stege[79]) og æde.
Liden Issegrim[80]) var hendes sidste Ven,
den slikkede Haanden, der dræbte den.

---

[68]) aperture for the smoke. [69]) cunningly, artificially. [70]) hid, concealed. [71]) a flat stone [a slate]. [72]) count $\frac{1}{3}$ p. 45. [73]) howl. [74]) groves. [75]) left. [76]) morsel. [77]) corpses. [78]) pray. [79]) roast, broil. [80]) the dog's name.

En sulten [81]) Ulv ved Röghullet gik,
han tuded saa fælt og saa ilde;
den Liglugt [82]) han i Næsen fik,
den Brád [83]) han smage [84]) vilde.
Han snused og kradsede med stor Flid, [85])
og kasted de Stene behænde;
han grov fra Morgen til Midnats Tid,
da havde det Arbejde Ende.
Han ned til skön Hilda i Hulen drat; [86])
det Möde [87]) ham ej mon behage, [88])
han vilde saa fus [89]) tilbage;
men Hilda ham griber i Halen [90]) fat,
af Hulen han hende maa drage
sig selv til megen Umage. [91])
Til Skoven lakked den Ulv afsted, [92])
det bedste han kunde [93]) i mörken Nat,
men Hilda laae saa syg og mat, [94])
sine Hænder vréd [95]) og bitterlig græd.
Mod Himlen hun rakte [96]) de Hænder smaa,
saa venlig de Stjerner ned til hende saae.
„Ak Herre Gud Fader i Himmerig!
Du over mig usle forbarme dig! [97])
Du hjalp mig ud af Hulens Nöd, [98])
du frelse mig nu fra Hungerens Död!" —
Saa bad hun, og slumred saa södelig ind.
Hun sov saa trygt foruden Fare,
bevogted af Himmelens Engleskare, [99])
alt i det klare Maaneskin.

---

[81]) bungry. [82]) smell of the corpses. [83]) meat, properly roasted meat. [84]) taste. [85]) used both snout and claws very diligently. [86]) fell, tumbled. [87]) meeting. [88]) please, like. [89]) fain. [90]) the tail. [91]) pains, trouble. [92]) trotted off. [93]) as fast as he could. [94]) weary. [95]) wrung. [96]) stretched ($\frac{1}{3}$ p. 42). [97]) have pity, mercy upon! optat. [98]) distress. [99]) host of angels.

Den næste Morgen, da det blev Dag,
hun vaagnede op med stor Behag.[100])
Den blide [1]) Sol i Purpurglands [2])
steg frem bag Skovens grönne Krands.
I klaren Luft den Lærke sang,
og kvidred [3]) Gud Fader sin Morgensang.
„Ak Herre Gud Fader i Himmerig!
hvor her paa Jórden er lystelig!"
Saa tænkte hun paa sin Fader grum [4])
og Rerik sin Hjærtens kære.
„Hvor mon paa Jorden de vanke om?
Ak, mon i Live de ere?
Ak, kjendte jeg nu kun Sti og Vej,
og var jeg ej saa mat!
men fjærn og nær jeg öjner ej
et Spór [5]) i vilden Krat." [6])
Da hörte hun en venlig Lyd
som af en Jægers [7]) Hórn;
hendes Hjærte slog saa höjt af Fryd,
hun ilte gjennem Krat og Tórn;
da glemte hun al sin Hjærtesorg.
Det var ung Hagbart fra Reriks Borg.
„Du Ungersvend, forbarme Dig!
Jeg er en fattig Mö,
jeg har i Skoven forvildet mig, [8])
og maa af Hunger dö.
Jeg vanked om den ganske Nat,
jeg er saa syg, jeg er saa mat." —
„Ej est du nogen ringe Kvind,
„du favre Blomme [9]) du Liljevand!"
Saa satte han hende paa Gangeren [10]) sin,
og réd derfra paa Stand. [11])

---

[100]) delight, pleasure. [1]) chearful bright. [2]) purple splendor. [3]) warbled. [4]) cruel. [5]) trace, path. [6]) copse, briars. [7]) a hunter's. [8]) lost my way. [9]) poet. for *Blomst*, flower. [10]) steed. [11]) immediately.

Og alt som de red af Skoven ud,
de talte saa mangehaande:
„hvor agted du dig, skön Jomfru prud!
„medens du kom i slig Vaande?" [12])
„Jeg vilde til Valdemars gyldne Borg
„at tjene som Tærne i Stegerset [13]) der."
„Vilde du til Valdemars gyldne Borg,
„da var du vist fremmed i Landet her.
„Kong Valdemar hviler i sörten Jörd,
„hans Borg er töm og öde,
„Kong Alkor den vandt med Manddom [14]) stor,
„men selver [15]) af Sorrig han döde;
„ti Valdemars Datter, den vænneste Mö,
„der fandtes saa vide paa Jordens Ö,
„blev kvalt [16]) i Borgens Flammer;
„det var stor Ynk [17]) og Jammer.
„Prins Rerik, hendes Fæstemand, [18])
„han blev saa vee tilmode;
„saa drog han bort til Jorsalaland [19])
„for Synderne sine at böde.
„Der monne han Tröst og Husvalelse [20]) faa
„alt for sin bitre Sorg;
„i Morgen han lader sit Bryllup staa
„med Malfred paa sin Borg." —
Da blegnede [21]) Hilda, og daanede [22]) brat.
„Hvad fattes dig, [23]) væne Mö?"
„Mig fattes slet intet, jeg er kun saa mat,
„ret [24]) som jeg skulde dö."
„Nu frisk tilmode! [25]) lad fare din Sorg!
„Nu ride vi flugs til Reriks Borg;

---

[12]) distress. [13]) kitchen. [14]) valour. [15]) the old nom. sing. masc. for *selv*. [16]) suffocated ($\frac{1}{2}$ p. 42). [17]) pity. [18]) betrothed man. [19]) an old name of Palestine. [20]) comfort and consolation. [21]) turned pale ($\frac{1}{1}$). [22]) fainted ($\frac{1}{1}$). [23]) what ails thee. [24]) just. [25]) cheer up.

„der har jeg to Söstre kære,
„hos Malfred tjene de Tærner smaa,
„de vil dig undfange[26]) med Ære."[27]) —
„O! hvis jeg hos Malfred tjene maa!
„Jeg kan baade sy og sömme,
„dertil jeg kan Guldharpen slaa
„alt som sig en Tærne mon sömme."
Nu ride de af Borgeled ind,
der möder hun Ven og Frænde;
da svöber hun sit Hoved i Skind,[28])
at ingen maa hende kjende.
Ind traadte ung Hagbart for Malfred at staa:
„hvor mon det med eder, stolt Malfred! gaa?"
„I Nat[29]) jeg har födt[30]) dig saa faver en Sön,
„dine Söstre ham svöbte,[31]) og fostre i Lön,[32])
„mig arme[33]) til Angest og Kvide.
„I Morgen mit Bryllup med Rerik skal staa,
„jeg kan det ej længer forhale.[34])
„Krist give i sorten Muld jeg laa!
„Den Vej til Kirken at ride er lang,
„og lang at höre den Messesang;
„Gud hjælpe mig arme Kvinde!"
Da svarede Hagbart: „kær Malfred min!
„jeg veed vel Raad[35]) at finde.
„I Borgegaard[36]) stander en Mö saa fin,
„liden Gunver monne hun hede;[37])
„jeg fandt i Skoven den Liljevand.
„For eder til Kirke hun ride kan,
„naar hende derom I mon bede.
„Hun svöbe sig vel i Guldkaaben ind,
„hun skjule sit Hoved i hviden Lin,
„og tale kun lidt med Fæstemand din,

---

[26]) receive. [27]) honorably. [28]) furred cloak, mantle. [29]) last night. [30]) born, brought forth. [31]) swaddled. [32]) secretly. [33]) poor, wretched. [34]) retard. [35]) counsel, advice, help. [36]) an old expression for *courtyard*. [37]) is called, is her name.

„alt som for en Brúd sig mon skikke,[38])
„saa mærker[39]) Kong Rerik det ikke.
„Og, naar fra Kirke de komme hjem,
„da skifte[40]) I Klæder, og du træde frem.
„Ved Bordet du sidde saa hövisk en Brúd,
„og bære med Ære Guldkronen prud;
„men, naar det lakker ad[41]) Sengetide,[42])
„kan Gunver sove ved Kongens Side." — — —

„Hör du, liden Gunver! jeg siger dig,
om du est tro og uden Svig,[43])
jeg giver dig Kaabe af Skarlagen röd,
jeg giver dig Kjórtel af Silke blöd;[44])
jeg giver dig Hælften[45]) af alt mit Guld,
om du vil være mig tro og huld."[46])

Nu skinner Solen paa Höjelofts Glar,[47])
Saa hellig den Söndagsmorgen var.
De Riddere axle det Purpurskind,
og gange for stolten Kong Rerik ind.
Men Rerik husker[48]) saa mangt tilbage,
han tænker paa Hilda og fordums Dage.

Nu skinner Solen i Jomfrubur,
der stande de Tærner med Ære,
de fæste paa Hilda Guldkronen pur,
saa stoltelig mon hun den bære.
„Liden Gunver, liden Gunver, du röbe mig ej!
„Du mæle ej Ord paa den Kirkevej!"
Men Hilda hun sukker[49]) saa saare i Lön,
hun tænker saa ofte paa Alkors Sön.

Nu rider skön Hilda paa Gangeren graa,
Kong Rerik alt ved hendes Side;
da synge i Skoven de Fugle smaa,
det var nu ved Midsommers Tide.

---

[38]) it becomes. [39]) observes. [40]) exchange. [41]) approaches to. [42]) bedtime. [43]) fraud. [44]) soft. [45]) one half. [46]) affectionate. [47]) an old form for *Glas*, i. e. windows. [Icel. *gler*.] [48]) remembers, thinks. [49]) sighs.

„Ak," sukkede Hilda, „den Dag var skön,
„da Valdemars Datter og Alkors Sön
„de gave hinanden deres Tro udi Lön!" —
„Hvi sukker I saa, liden Malfred fin?" —
„Jeg talede kun til Gangeren min."

Nu ride de atter en Stund[50]) tilsammen:
„Den Vej, stolt Malfred! er ond og lang,
„vi ville den korte med Spög og Gammen,
„vi ville os kvæde en lystig Sang." —

„Tre Aar jeg i Jórdens Hule sad,
„alle lystige Viser jeg forgad![51])
„min liden Hund jeg stegte og aad,
„graa Ulven haver jeg reden."

„Hvad siger I dér, skön Jomfru fin?"
„Jeg talede kun til Gangeren min."

Ved Vejen stod Valdemars gyldne Borg,
nu var der kun Stene og Gruus[52]) tilbage;
da blegned skön Hilda saa brat af Sorg,
hun tænkte paa fordums favre Dage.

„Her hoppe Duer,
hvor för har danset Fruer;
her rode[53]) Svín,
hvor Kæmper för drak Mjöd og Vín."

„Hvad kvæder I nú, liden Fæstemö fin?"
„Jeg talede kun til Gangeren min."

Ved Vejen stande de gamle Linde;
Kong Rerik rider forbi saa tyst;[54])
dog sukked han dybt,[55]) og droges til Minde
i Ungdoms Dage sin Elskovs Lyst.
Men Hilda griber de Tömmer[56]) smaa,
den Ganger i Lindenes Skygge mon staa.

---

[50]) a while. [51]) forgot. an old impf. of *forgætter*, now we say *glemmer, glemte*. [52]) rubbish. [53]) root. [54]) silently. [55]) heavy. [56]) the reins, i. e. *Tøjle*, bridle.

„Her stander Du Lind
baade faver og fin;
din Skygge er endnu saa kölig og skön,
din Krone er endnu saa frisk og grön;
Smaafuglene kvidre endnu saa glade
og lege imellem de tætte Blade,
som fordum da i din Skygge
vi sloge Guldharpen trygge,
som fordum da Alkors Sön
gav Hilda sin Tro i Lön."

Det blev Kong Rerik saa underlig ved,
en Taare ham randt paa Kinden[57]) ned:
„Stolt Malfred, stolt Malfred, hvi kvæder I saa?"
„Jeg kvad kun, fordi min Hest vilde staa."

Nu er den Kirke flugs derhos,
der stige de néd af höjen Rös,[58])
tölv Riddere fölge den Konning prúd,
tölv Tærner fölge den unge Brúd.
De Munke dem möde i Kirkedör
med Bön og Sang, som det sig bör.[59])
Nu staa de for Alteret sömmelig.[60])
„Skön Jomfru! I skifte nu Ring med mig."
Da fik han den samme Ring tilbage,
som Hilda han gav i fordums Dage
alt under de gamle Linde;
den Ring han sig kunde vel minde.

„Stolt Malfred! I sige mig úden Svíg,
„hvor fik I den Ring, som I gav mig?" —
„Min Tærne den fandt mellem Stene og Grus
„i Asken af Valdemars gyldne Hus."
„Gud hjælpe mig arme, uselig Svend![61])
Da Hilda döde, da bar hun den.
Tag Ringen tilbage, min Fæstemö kære!
jeg kan den ret aldrig paa Fingeren bære;

---

[57]) the cheek. [58]) horse, poet. [the Icel. form. is *kross*, or *ross*, ED.] [59]) ought to be. [60]) becomingly. [61]) swain, youth.

tag Ringen tilbage, kær Malfred fin!
og aldrig den komme af Fingeren din!"
Nu monne de hjem til Borgen ride.
Den Brudgom han var saa sorrigfuld;
men Hilda har glemt al Sorg og Kvide,
for Rerik er hende tro og huld.
De Kæmper sidde ved bréden Bórd,
de drikke baade Öl og Mjöd
de vexle saa mangt et skjemtsomt Ord;
ti Mjöden den smager saa söd.
Kong Rerik sidder saa tankefuld[62])
alt ved stolt Malfreds Side;
hun bærer saa höjt den Krone af Guld,
det maa ung Hagbart vel lide.[63])
Men Hilda i Stégerset drúd[64]) mon gaa
alt med de Kokketærner[65]) smaa.
Kong Rerik taler til Bruden sin:
„I sige mig nu, stolt Malfred fin!
hvi sukket I, da ved Middags Tide
vi gjennem mörken Skov mon ride?"
„Hvi jeg sukked, det haver jeg plat[66]) forgjet,
jeg bad min Tærne at gjemme[67]) det."
Stolt Malfred til Stegerset ganger sig.
„Liden Gunver! nu haver du sveget[68]) mig!
hvi sukked du, da ved Middags Tide
du gjennem Skoven med Kongen mon ride?"
„Jeg har dig ei sveget, min Frue fin!
jeg snakkede[69]) kun til Gangeren min."
Kong Rerik taler til ungen Brúd;
„I sige mig nu, stolt Malfred prud!
hvad sagde I, da for Spög og Gammen
vi vilde kvæde en Vise[70]) tilsammen?"

---

[62]) pensive. [63]) it is a delight for him. [64]) sad, poet. [Icel. *þrútin* used of a countenance swollen from weeping. ED.] [65]) cookmaids. [66]) entirely. [67]) keep, remember. [68]) betrayed. [69]) chattered. [70]) lay.

„Hvad jeg sagde, det haver jeg plat forgjet,
jeg bad min Tærne at gjemme det."
Skön Malfred til Stegerset ganger sig.
„Liden Gunver; nu har du dog sveget mig;
I vilde kvæde en Vise tilsammen?"
„Jeg har dig ei sveget, min Frue fin!
jeg talede kun til Gangeren min."
Kong Rerik han sidder saa tankefuld,
i Hú saa vréd han var:
„jeg seer nok, skjön Malfred! I er mig ej huld,
jeg faaer kun saa korte Svar.[71])
Nu sig mig — I drages det sikkert til Minde —
hvad var det I kvad ved de gamle Linde?"
„Hvad jeg kvad det haver jeg plat forgjet,
jeg bad min Tærne at gjemme det,"
Stolt Malfred ganger i Stegerset ind:
„Du har dog bedraget[72]) mig, listige Kvind!
hvad var det, du kvad ved de gamle Linde!"
„Jeg har ei bedraget dig, Malfred fin!
jeg talede kun til Gangeren min;
alt, hvad jeg kvad ved de gamle Linde,
det kvad jeg kun til min Ganger graa,
fordi han ej vilde ad Vejen gaa."
Kong Rerik han sidder saa vréd i Hú:
„stolt Malfred, stolt Malfred! I vise mig nu
den Ring, jeg eder i Kirken gav." —
„Den Ring, I mig i Kirken gav,
den gav jeg til min Tærne;
jeg bærer de Ringe ej gjerne."
„Du husker jeg bad dig, stolt Malfred fin!
den aldrig at lægge af Fingeren din."
Stolt Malfred hun ganger i Stegerset néd,
da var hun i Hu saa vréd;

---

[71]) answers ($\frac{2}{1}$). [72]) deceived.

„og hör, liden Gunver! om föje Stund[73])
jeg straffe skal dine lumske Fund;[74])
giv hid den Ring, dig Rerik gav!"

„Den Ring mig Rerik i Kirken gav,
den svór jeg at bære til min Grav,
den kommer ret aldrig af Fingeren min,
den kan jeg ej give dig, Malfred fin!"

„Giv Ringen hid, du lede[75]) Kvind!
eller jeg dig kaster i Ormegaard[76]) ind;
Kong Rerik vil see den nu paa Stand."

„Den Ring ret aldrig, stolt Malfred! du faar,
om du mig end[77]) kaster i Ormegaard.
Men vil Kong Rerik den see paa Stand,
da skjule du mig under Kaaben din,
og vise ham Ringen paa Fingeren min!"

Stolt Malfred hun var vel i Hu saa vred,
dog vendte hun Talen saa fage:
„jeg giver dig, Gunver, Guldkæden bred,
om du mig ej vil bedrage."

Nu svöbte de sig i Kaaben fin,
og ginge saa listig i Höjeloft ind
dem begge til megen Umage.
Liden Hilda fremrakte sin Haand saa hvid
alt under den Kaabe behænde.

„Stolt Malfred! I stige kun[78]) nærmere hid,
at Ringen jeg rigtig[79]) maa kjende!"

Da griber Kong Rerik om Haanden fat,
og kaster til Side[80]) den Kaabe saa brat;
der stander stolt Malfred bleg og röd,
af skogrende[81]) Latter[82]) den Höjsal gjenlöd;[83])
men Rerik han blev saa vel tilmode.

---

[73]) in a short time. [74]) thy insidious devices. [75]) abominable. [76]) prison filled with venomous serpents. [77]) *om end*, although. [78]) but. [79]) duly. [80]) throws open. [81]) chuckling. [82]) laughter. [83]) resounded.

„Ak!" raabte han „ak er det dig!"
og slynged omkring hende Armene baade,
„ak Hilda! ak, er det tilvisse dig?
est du ej et Gjenfærd,[84]) som skuffer[85]) mig,
da skalt du mig aldrig forlade."[86])
Der blev stor Fryd i den Kongeborg;[87])
ti Rerik han havde forvundet sin Sorg;
men Malfred og Hagbart i Ormegaard
skulde lide for Falskhed en Straf saa haard.
Da bad skjön Hilda: „ak Konning god!
om I mig en Bön vilde vide,
da spare I Hagbarts unge Blod,
han frelste mig fra stor Kvide;
I spare og stolt Malfreds Liv,
hendes Falskhed jo var mig til Baade;
I give ung Hagbart hende til Viv,
I skjenke mig denne Naade!"[88])
Da svarede Rerik den Konning bold:
„mit Hjærte, skjön Hilda! er i din Vold,
ret aldrig en Bön jeg kan nægte[89]) dig.
Gudfader skee Lov i Himmerig!
min Ungdoms Mö jeg har funden,
nu har jeg al Sorrig forvunden;
nu ville vi leve i Fryd og Gammen,
til Graven os begge mon skjule." Amen!

---

[84]) spectre. [85]) deludes. [86]) quit. [87]) royal palace. [88]) grace.
[89]) deny, refuse.

TRYMSKVIDE ELLER HAMMERENS HENTELSE,

en eddisk Sang, oversat i Originalens Versemål
ved denne Bogs Forfatter.

(Af samme Bog.)

The purport of this very old song is, that the chief Giant had purloined Thor's mallet, the great palladium of the Gods, Loke is dispatched to discover it, and returns with the account, that the Giant Thrym has it indeed in his possession, but will by no means restore it, unless the Goddess Freya will become his wife; the Ases however contrive to deceive him, Thor recovers his mallet, and immediately destroys the Giant, together with all the guests assembled for the supposed wedding. — Those who wish a farther illustration af this song may consult Prof. Finn Magnussen's den ældre Edda, 2d vol. Copenhagen, 1822.

Vred blev da Vingtor [1])
der han vågnede,
og han sin Hammer
hos sig savnede; [2])
Skægget han rysted [3])
rev han og sit Hår
længe Jordens Søn [4])
ledte rundten om. [5])
Og han det Ord
allerførst kvad:
„hør du nu, Loke!
„lad mig dig berette, [6])
„hvad ingen ved
„hverken paa Jorden
„eller udi Himlen:
„Ås [7]) er Hamren ranet!" [8])
De gik til Freyas
fagre Gårde, [9])
og han det Ord
allerførst kvad:
„vil du mig, Freya!
„Fjederhammen [10]) låne [11])
„om jeg min Hammer
„opspore [12] måtte?"
„Låne dig den vilde jeg
„var den end af Sølv,

---

[1]) the god Thor. [2]) missed. [3]) shook. [4]) the earth was the mother of Thor. [5]) searched round about. [6]) tell. [7]) The Ases is a name common to the deities, like *the Olympians*, a sort of national name. The As means here the god Thor himself. [8]) robbed. [9]) houses, dwellings. [10]) the feather-covering, a set of wings. [11]) lend. [12]) trace, find out.

„få den skulde du,
„skönt den var af Guld.
Flöj da Loke,
Fjederhammen suste,
indtil han kom uden
Asernes Stad,
og han kom inden
Jøtnernes Land.

Trym sad paa Höjen,
Tussernes Fyrste,
gyldne Halsbånd [13])
Hundene [14]) han flettede, [15])
selv han og jævnede [16])
Sadeldyrets [17]) Man.
„Hvor går det Asers?
„hvor går det Alfer?
„hvi kom du ene
„til Jøtnernes Land?"

„Ilde går det Aser,
„ilde går det Alfer,
„har du ikke Lorrides
„Hammer bortgjemt? [18])
„Lorrides Hammer
„haver jeg bortgjemt,
„otte Mile
„under Jorden;
„ingen skal få den
„atter tilbage,
„uden han fører mig
„Freya til Brud!"

Flöj da Loke,
Fjederhammen suste,
indtil han kom uden
Jøtnernes Land,
og han kom inden
Asernes Stad.
Mødte ham der Thor
midt i Staden,
og han det Ord
allerførst kvad:
„Fik du noget
„for din Möje? [19])
„sig mig i Luften
„en lang Beretning;
„tit for den siddende
„Sagnet forvildes, [20])
„og den liggende
„lyver en Hob. [21])
„Noget [22]) fik jeg
„for min Möje:
„Tussernes Fyrste
„Trym har din Hammer;
„ingen skal få den
„atter tilbage,
„uden han fører ham
„Freya til Brud!

De gik med sagre
Freya at tale,
og han det Ord
allerførst kvad:

---

[13]) collars (ᵈ). [14]) for the dogs, Dative. [15]) braided. [16]) evened. [17]) the saddle-animal i. e. the horse. [18]) put aside, a euphemism for robbed. [19]) did you get (gain) any thing by the trouble you have taken. [20]) the tale is troubled. [21]) a (good) deal. [22]) something.

„Bind om dig, Freya!
„Brudelinet[23])
„age[24]) skal vi sammen
„til Jotnernes Land!"
Vred blev da Freya,
og fnyste sare,[25])
hele Asa-salen
under hende skjalv,
brast og det store
Brisinge Halsbånd:
„Kald mig den kådeste[26])
„blandt Kvinder alle,
„om jeg ager med dig
„til Jotnernes Land!"
Strags vare Aser
alle på Tinge
og Asynier
alle på Tale:
monne derom rådslå[27])
de mægtige Guder,
hur[28]) de skulle hente
Hammeren for Tor.
Det kvad da Hejmdal
den hvideste Ase,
vel forudvidende[29])
som Vaner[30]) alle:
„Binde vi om Tor da
„Brudelinet,
„bære han det store
„Brisinge Halsbånd;
„Klingrende Nøgler
„knytte vi til Bæltet,
„lade om hans Knæ
„Kvindeklæder falde,
„men paa Brystet
„brede Ædelstene,[31])
„kunstigen med Sæt[32])
„sire[33]) vi hans Hoved!
Det kvad da Tor
den tapre Herre:
„Aserne skulde
„mig skælde for fej,[34])
„hvis jeg lod mig binde
„med Brudelinet."
Det kvad da Loke
Løves Arving:
„Tor, med flig Tale
„ti du kun stille;
„snart skulle Jotner
„Asgård bebo,
„uden[35]) du din Hammer
„henter dig igjen."
Vandt de da om Tor
Brudelinet,
bar han og det store
Brisinge Halsbånd,
klingrende Nøgler
knytted de til Bæltet,
lode om hans Knæ
Kvindeklæder falde,

---

[23]) bridal attire. [24]) drive, ride. [25]) fumed terribly. [26]) the most lascivious, wanton. [27]) deliberate. [28]) an obsolete expression for *hvor*, or *hvorledes*, how. [29]) foreseeing. [30]) a gentile name like Ases, perhaps a Slavonian tribe, to which Hejmdal belonged. [31]) gems. [32]) coif. [33]) let us adorn. [34]) reproach me with effeminacy. [35]) if not.

men på Brystet
brede Ædelstene,
kunstigen med Sæt
fired de hans Hoved.

Det kvad da Loke
Løvøs Arving:
„vist vil jeg med dig,
„være din Tærne,
„age skal vi sammen
„til Jøtnernes Land."

Strags bleve begge
Bukke [36]) drevne hjem,
satte for Skaglerne, [37])
skulde hurtig løbe:
mangen Klippe brast,
brændte Jord i Lue;
Odins Søn agede
til Jøtnernes Land.

Det kvad da Trym
Tussernes Fyrste: [38])
„Rejser eder Jøtner,
„reder [39]) os Bænke,
„fører mig nu da
„Freya til Brud,
„Njords sagre Dotter
„fra Noatune!

„Gange her til Gården
„guldhorned' Køer,
„kulsorte Øksne
„Jøtnen til Gammen;
„nok har jeg Skatte,
„nok har jeg Guldbånd,
„Freya alene
„fattedes jeg end!" [40])

Tidlig om Kvælde
kom der mange Gæster,
og for Jøtnerne
Øl bleb båret frem,
åd da Tor en Okse,
åtte Laxe,
alle de Kræse, [41])
Kvinderne skuld' have;
Tørsten slukked [42]) Tor
med trende Boller Mjød.

Det kvad da Trym
Tussernes Fyrste:
„hvor så' man Brude
„bedre tage til sig?
„Aldrig så' jeg Brude
„bedre at så Mad, [43])
„aldrig nogen Mø
„mere Mjød at drikke.

Den snilde [44]) Tærne
hun sad derhos,
og udsandt Svar
på Jøtnens Tale:
„Freya Mad ei sik
„fire sidste Døgn, [45])
„så rased hun af Længsel
„efter Rejsen hid.

---

[36]) both the he-goats (viz. that used to draw his chariot). [37]) the trace. [38]) viz. as he saw them coming with the supposed bride. [39]) spread, cover. [40]) I was wanting as yet. [41]) sweetmeats, pastry-work [dainties ED]. [42]) quenched. [43]) eat. [44]) ingenious. [45]) days and nights ($\frac{2}{3}$).

Han[46]) luded under Lin,[47])
lysted at kysse,
men bort forfærdet
fór han gjennem Salen:
„hvi er få skarpe
„den Skjönnes Blikke
„Ild mig synes
„af Öjnene brænde."
Den smilde Tærne
hun sad derhos,
og udsandt Svar
på Jætnens Tale:
„Freya Sövn ej fik
„fire sidste Dögn,
„så rased hun af Længsel
„efter Reisen hid."
Ind kom den arme[48])
Jætne-Söster,
og boved at bede[49])
om Brudepenge.[50])
„Ræk mig de røde
„Ringe af din Hånd,
„hvis du vil vinde
„mit Venskab helt,
„mit hele Venskab
„min Hyldest[51]) tilfulde!"

Det kvad da Trym,
Tusernes Fyrste,
„Bærer ind Hammeren
„Bruden at vie,
„lægger Mjølner[52])
„i Møens Skjød,
„efter Vørs[53]) Skikke[54])
„vier[55]) os nu sammen."
Lorrides Hu
lo i hans Bryst,
da hårdmodig Helt
Hammeren kjendte;
Troldenes Fyrste,
Trym, slog han først,
og hele Jættens
Ætt han knuste.
Dræbtes og den usle
Jætne-Söster,
som bedet havde
om Brudegave:
hun fik Skrub
for Skillinger,[56])
og Hammer-Hug
for hele Penge;[57])
så kom Odins Sön
atter til sin Hammer.

---

[46]) He, the Giant. [47]) ducked with his head under the veil. [48]) sorry, miserable. [49]) dared to beg. [50]) bride-gifts. [51]) affection. [52]) the crusher, the name of the mallet. [53]) the Goddess of marriage. [54]) the ceremonies, manners. [55]) consecrate, especially join in wedlock. [56]) cuffs for coins; *Skrub* is here a collective noun, we say also *en Skrub*, a blow. [57]) *hele Penge*, liter. whole money, i. e. large silver or gold-coins, of which *Skillinger* are considered as fractions or fragments.

DATE DUE

JUL 15 1997			
	JUN 30 2003		

HIGHSMITH #45220

PD3109 .R22
Dr. E. C. Rask's Danish grammar,
Princeton Theological Seminary–Speer Library
1 1012 00027 1884